

HOÀNG THÁI DƯƠNG

(GV chuyên Anh trường THCS - THPT Nguyễn Khuyến - TP. Hồ Chí Minh)

**BÀI GIẢNG
VÀ LỜI GIẢI CHI TIẾT
TIẾNG ANH**

8

Theo sách giáo khoa mới - Chương trình chuẩn

(Tái bản lần thứ nhất)

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

16 Hàng Chuối – Hai Bà Trưng – Hà Nội

Điện thoại: Biên tập – Chế bản: (04) 39714896

Hành chính: (04) 39714899; Tổng Biên tập: (04) 39715011;

Fax: (04) 39729436

* * *

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:

Giám đốc - Tổng biên tập: TS. PHẠM THỊ TRÂM



downloadsachmienphi.com

Biên tập: ĐỨC HẠNH

Sửa bài: THÁI VÂN

Chế bản: Nhà sách HỒNG ÂN

Trình bày bìa: VÕ THỊ THỪA

Đối tác liên kết xuất bản: Nhà sách HỒNG ÂN

SÁCH LIÊN KẾT

BÀI GIẢNG VÀ LỜI GIẢI CHI TIẾT TIẾNG ANH 8

Mã số: 2L - 784ĐH2014

In 1.000 cuốn, khổ 17 × 24cm tại Công ty Cổ phần Văn hóa Văn Lang.

Địa chỉ: Số 6 Nguyễn Trung Trực - P.5 - Q. Bình Thạnh - TP. Hồ Chí Minh.

Số xuất bản: 2789 - 2014/CXB/19 - 435/ĐHQGHN, ngày 26/12/2014.

Quyết định xuất bản số: 794LK-XH/QĐ – NXBĐHQGHN.

In xong và nộp lưu chiểu quý I năm 2015.

Lời nói đầu

Chúng tôi biên soạn cuốn sách này với mục đích giúp các em học sinh chuẩn bị trước các bài học từ vựng và ngữ pháp tiếng Anh để dễ dàng tiếp thu các bài giảng của thầy, cô. Các em cũng có thể sử dụng cuốn sách này để củng cố kiến thức đã học được trong lớp bằng cách làm các bài tập về từ vựng và ngữ pháp. Ngoài ra, các em có thể dùng cuốn sách này như một tài liệu tham khảo để ôn tập trước mỗi bài thi kiểm tra định kì và học kì. Với ý tưởng đó, chúng tôi trình bày cuốn sách này với các bài giảng bám sát từng Unit (Bài học) trong sách giáo khoa lớp 8, gồm các phần:

VOCABULARY: Cung cấp những từ cần thiết với phiên âm quốc tế, ý nghĩa và các ví dụ để các em nắm vững cách dùng.

GRAMMAR: Bài giảng rõ ràng, cô đọng chủ điểm ngữ pháp của bài học. Cung cấp thêm những bài ôn tập kiến thức các lớp trước.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES: Các bài luyện tập gồm dạng tự luận và trắc nghiệm để các em khắc sâu các chủ điểm ngữ pháp.

VOCABULARY EXERCISES: Các bài tập giúp các em nhớ kĩ cách dùng từ vựng và gia đình từ.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES: Câu hỏi trắc nghiệm giúp các em phân biệt cách đọc các nguyên âm và phụ âm của một số từ thông dụng.

PROGRESS TESTS: Các đề kiểm tra cuối mỗi bài học ôn tập các chủ điểm ngữ pháp và từ ngữ theo dạng câu hỏi trắc nghiệm và tự luận, giúp các em rèn luyện, tự đánh giá sự tiến bộ để nâng cao kiến thức tiếng Anh.

Ở cuối sách, có phần đáp án gợi ý cho các bài tập và các đề kiểm tra để các em có thể đối chiếu phần trả lời của mình sau khi đã thực hiện xong các bài tập và đề kiểm tra.

Mặc dầu đã cố gắng biên soạn thật kĩ, mong muốn các em có một tài liệu học tập bổ ích, nhưng chúng tôi không thể tránh khỏi những thiếu sót trong sách. Kính mong quý đồng nghiệp và các em học sinh góp ý sửa chữa để chúng tôi có thể điều chỉnh trong những lần in sau.

Hoàng Thái Dương



downloadsachmienphi.com

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

Unit

1

MY FRIENDS

(Các bạn của tôi)

VOCABULARY

- annoy [ə'noɪ] (v) : làm phiền; làm bực mình
 Ví dụ: It really annoys me when people push in front of me in a line.
 (Thật là bực mình khi người ta đứng chen vào trước mặt mình khi đang xếp hàng.)
- bald [bɔ:ld] (adj) : (đầu) hói
 Ví dụ: My uncle started going bald when he was forty.
 (Bác tôi bắt đầu bị hói lúc bốn mươi tuổi.)
- blond [blɔ:nd] (adj) : (tóc) vàng
- character ['kærəktər] (n) : tính cách
 Ví dụ: Mr. Lam, who is respected by his students, has a strong character.
 (Thầy Lâm, người được học sinh kính trọng, có một tính cách mạnh mẽ.)
- curly ['kɜ:li] (adj) : (tóc) xoắn
- extreme [ɪk'stri:m] (adj) : cực độ
- extremely [ɪk'stri:mli] (adv) : rất; cực kì
 Ví dụ: She finds it extremely difficult to talk to strange people.
 (Cô ấy thấy cực kì khó khăn khi phải nói chuyện với những người lạ.)
- generous ['dʒenərəs] (adj) : rộng lượng; hào phóng
 Ví dụ: It is very generous of him to give the poor a lot of money.
 (Ông ấy rất hào phóng đã cho những người nghèo rất nhiều tiền của.)
- joke [dʒɒk] (n) : trò đùa; chuyện vui
- neighbor ['neɪbə] (n) : người hàng xóm
- neighborhood ['neɪbəhʊd] (n) : khu phố
- next-door [ˌnekst'dɔ:r] (adj) & (adv): ở cạnh nhà
 Ví dụ: I usually go to school with the boy who lives next-door.
 (Tôi thường đi học với cậu bé ở cạnh nhà.)
- orphan ['ɔ:fn] (n) : trẻ mồ côi
- orphanage ['ɔ:fənɪdʒ] (n) : trung tâm nuôi trẻ mồ côi
 Ví dụ: Volunteer students go to work at the orphanage on the weekend.
 (Các sinh viên tình nguyện đến làm việc tại trung tâm nuôi trẻ mồ côi vào cuối tuần.)
- outgoing ['aʊtɡoʊɪŋ] (adj) : thích giao tiếp; dễ hòa đồng
- photograph ['fɒtəgræf] (n) : bức ảnh
- photography ['fɒ'ta:grəfi] (n) : ngành nhiếp ảnh

- please [ˈpli:z] (v): làm vui lòng
- pleased [ˈpli:zd] (adj): vui lòng; hài lòng
- pleasure [ˈpleʒə] (n): niềm vui

Ví dụ: It is a great pleasure to welcome you all here today.

(Thật là một niềm vui to lớn khi được đón tiếp tất cả các bạn ở đây ngày hôm nay.)

- public [ˈpʌblɪk]: (n) công chúng; (adj) công cộng

Ví dụ: The palace is open to the public during the summer months.

(Cung điện được mở cửa cho công chúng trong những tháng hè.)

- slim [slɪm] (adj): thon; thanh mảnh

Ví dụ: She looks very slim in that dress.

(Cô ấy trông rất thon thả trong chiếc áo đầm ấy.)

- receive [rɪˈsi:v] (v): nhận

Ví dụ: David Beckham receives a lot of letters from his fans every week.

(David Beckham nhận rất nhiều thư của người hâm mộ mỗi tuần.)

- reserved [rɪˈzɜ:vɪd] (adj): dè dặt; ít nói

- sense of humor [ˈsens əv ˈhju:mər] (n): năng khiếu hài hước

- sociable [ˈsəʊʃəbl] (adj): dễ hòa đồng; thích giao tiếp

Ví dụ: Nga is a sociable girl who can make friends easily.

(Nga là một cô gái dễ hòa đồng, cô ấy có thể kết bạn một cách dễ dàng.)

- straight [streɪt] (adj): thẳng

Ví dụ: Do you like straight hair or curly hair?

(Bạn thích tóc thẳng hay tóc xoăn?)

- unlike [ʌnˈlaɪk] (prep): không giống với

Ví dụ: Unlike his brother, Tom is very active and friendly.

(Không giống với anh của cậu ấy, Tom thì rất năng động và thân thiện.)

- volunteer [ˌvɒlənˈtiə] (n) người tình nguyện; (v) tình nguyện

Ví dụ: We need more volunteers to clean up the beach in summer.

(Chúng ta cần thêm người tình nguyện làm vệ sinh bãi biển trong mùa hè.)

GRAMMAR

REVIEW OF SIMPLE TENSES

(Ôn tập các thì đơn)

1/ Present simple (Thì hiện tại đơn)

2/ Past simple (Thì quá khứ đơn)

3/ (not) adjective + *enough* + to-infinitive,

Too + adjective + to-infinitive

1/ Present simple (Thì hiện tại đơn)

I/ Hình thức :

* Câu khẳng định - Affirmative:

I	
You	meet
We	watch
They	
He	meets
She	watches
It	

CHÚ Ý: Thêm '-s' hoặc '-es' khi chủ ngữ là: *He, She, It*, hoặc danh từ số ít. Với động từ 'Have', chúng ta đổi thành 'has' khi dùng với chủ từ: *He, She, It*, hoặc với danh từ số ít. Ví dụ:

He	has	a problem.
She	doesn't have	
It		
Mr. Tam		

* Câu phủ định - Negative:

I	don't	
You	do not	
We		meet
They		watch
He	doesn't	
She	does not	
It		

CHÚ Ý: Dùng nguyên mẫu (không thêm '-s/-es') sau 'don't' và 'doesn't'.

* Câu hỏi - Question:

Do	I you we they	meet? watch?
Does	he she it	

CHÚ Ý: * Dùng nguyên mẫu (không thêm ‘-s/-es’) sau ‘Do’ và ‘Does’.

*** Cách thêm “s” và “es” vào động từ ở ngôi thứ ba số ít:**

a/ Thêm ‘s’ vào hầu hết động từ khi chủ ngữ là ‘He, She, It’ hoặc danh từ số ít,

Ví dụ: - He sings

- She cooks

- It rains

b/ Thêm ‘es’ khi động từ tận cùng có: ‘s, ch, sh, z, x, o’. Ví dụ:

- He misses

- He goes

- She watches

- She fixes

- It finishes

- It buzzes

c/. Khi động từ tận cùng có ‘y’, mà trước nó là phụ âm thì ta đổi ‘y’ thành ‘i+es’.

Ví dụ:

- He replies

- She cries

- It carries

CHÚ Ý: Khi động từ tận cùng có ‘y’ nhưng trước ‘y’ là nguyên âm thì không thay đổi, và chỉ thêm ‘s’. Ví dụ:

- He says

- She enjoys

- It plays

*** Cách đọc “s” và “es” cuối động từ :** có ba cách đọc khác nhau căn cứ theo âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu:

Đọc [s] khi âm cuối của động từ là: [f, k, p, t, θ]	Đọc [z] khi âm cuối của động từ là: [b, d, g, l, m, n, r, v, ð, ɳ] và các nguyên âm.	Đọc [ɪz] khi âm cuối của động từ là:
laughs [læfs] speaks [spi:ks] hopes [houps] hates [herts]	robs [ru:bz] spends [spendz] hugs [hʌgz] falls [fɔ:lz] comes [kʌmz] bans [bænz] enjoys [ɪn'dʒɔɪz] serves [sɜ:vz] goes [gouz] does [dʌz, dəz]	crosses ['krɔ:sɪz] pushes ['pʊʃɪz] matches ['mætʃɪz] buzzes ['bʌzɪz] judges ['dʒʌdʒɪz]

II/ Cách dùng:

1/ Chúng ta dùng thì hiện tại đơn để diễn tả **những thói quen sinh hoạt hàng ngày trong hiện tại**. Ví dụ:

- My grandparents live in the countryside.

(Ông bà tôi sống ở thôn quê.)

- I visit my grandparents twice a month.

(Tôi thăm ông bà tôi mỗi tháng hai lần.)

CHÚ Ý: Khi dùng thì hiện tại đơn để nói về thói quen hàng ngày, chúng ta thường dùng thêm các trạng từ thường xuyên (adverbs of frequency): **always, usually, often, sometimes, rarely, never, ever,** Ví dụ:

- My grandfather *usually* gets up early in the morning.

(Ông tôi *thường* thức dậy sớm vào buổi sáng.)

- My grandmother *often* makes me a cake when I stay there.

(Bà tôi *thường* làm bánh cho tôi khi tôi lưu lại đó.)

2/ Chúng ta cũng dùng thì hiện tại đơn để diễn tả những **sự thật luôn luôn đúng**. Ví dụ:

- The Sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

(Mặt trời mọc ở hướng đông và lặn ở hướng tây.)

- The Earth moves around the sun. The Moon moves around the Earth.

(Trái đất quay quanh mặt trời. Mặt trăng quay quanh Trái đất.)

downloadsachmienphi.com

2/ Past simple

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

(Thì quá khứ đơn)

I/ Hình thức:

* **Câu khẳng định – Affirmative:**

I	
You	
He	watched
She	met
It	went
We	
You	
They	

CHÚ Ý: Khi dùng thì quá khứ, chúng ta thêm ‘-ed’ cho một số động từ: *watch – watched*, và một số động từ khác lại có hình thức thay đổi bất qui tắc: *meet – met, go – went,*

*** Câu phủ định – Negative:**

I		
You		
He		
She	didn't	watch
It	did not	meet
We		go
You		
They		

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta dùng hình thức nguyên mẫu (không thêm ‘-ed’) của động từ sau trợ động từ ‘didn’t / did not’.

*** Câu hỏi – Question:**

	I	
	you	
	he	
	she	watch?
Did	it	meet?
	we	go?
	you	
	they	

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta cũng dùng hình thức nguyên mẫu của động từ sau trợ động từ ‘Did’.

II/ Cách dùng: Chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn để diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra và chấm dứt trong quá khứ. Ví dụ:

- Hoa received a letter from her friend yesterday.
(Hoa đã nhận một lá thư của bạn cô ấy ngày hôm qua.)
- Nam met Mr. Thanh after class this morning.
(Nam đã gặp thầy Thanh sau giờ học sáng nay.)

CHÚ Ý: Khi dùng câu quá khứ, chúng ta thường dùng thêm các cách nói thời gian như: *yesterday, last week (last month, ...), two days ago, in June, in 2007,* Ví dụ:

- I sent a letter to my friend two days ago.
(Tôi đã gửi một lá thư cho bạn tôi hai hôm trước.)
- In 2007, I began to study at this school.
(Vào năm 2007, tôi bắt đầu học tại trường này.)

III/ Cách viết “-ed” :

a/ Hầu hết động từ hợp qui tắc được thêm “-ed” mà không cần có thay đổi nào.

Ví dụ:

work – worked

help – helped

press – pressed

b/ Động từ tận cùng có “y” mà trước nó là phụ âm, thì đổi “y” thành “i+ed”. Ví dụ:

cry – cried

carry – carried

study – studied

CHÚ Ý: Động từ tận cùng là “y” mà trước nó là nguyên âm thì không thay đổi khi thêm “-ed”. Ví dụ:

stay – stayed

play – played

enjoy – enjoyed

c/ Động từ một vần tận cùng có một phụ âm mà trước nó có một nguyên âm, thì nhân đôi phụ âm rồi thêm “-ed”. Ví dụ:

rob – robbed

fit – fitted

stop – stopped

drop – dropped

CHÚ Ý: Các động từ tận cùng là “x” hoặc “w” thì không nhân đôi:

fix – fixed

bow – bowed

d/ Động từ hai vần chỉ nhân đôi khi trọng âm đặt ở vần thứ hai. Ví dụ:

prefer – preferred

permit – permitted

occur – occurred

CHÚ Ý: Không nhân đôi phụ âm khi trọng âm đặt ở vần thứ nhất. Ví dụ:

listen – listened

visit – visited

happen – happened

open – opened

Động từ hai vần tận cùng có “l” mà trọng âm đặt ở vần thứ nhất, thì có thể nhân đôi hoặc không cần nhân đôi “l” khi thêm “-ed”. Ví dụ:

travel – traveled / travelled

cancel – canceled / cancelled

IV/ Cách đọc “-ed” : có thể đọc ba cách khác nhau căn cứ theo âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu.

Đọc [t] khi âm cuối động từ là: [f, k, p, s, tʃ, ʃ]	Đọc [d] khi âm cuối động từ là: [b, g, l, m, n, dʒ, r, v, z] và các nguyên âm.	Đọc [ɪd] khi âm cuối động từ là: [t, d]
coughed [kɔ:ft] watched [wɑ:tʃt] talked [tɔ:kt] brushed [brʌʃt] typed [taɪpt]	robbed [rɒ:bd] hugged [hʌgd] arrived [ə'raɪvd] controlled [kən'trəʊld] stayed [steɪd] banned [bænd] agreed [ə'grɪd] entered [ɪ'entəd]	waited ['weɪtɪd] hated ['heɪtɪd] added ['ædɪd] decided [dɪ'saɪdɪd]

3/ (not) adjective + *enough* + to-infinitive

((không) đủ ... để làm gì)

Too + adjective + to-infinitive

(quá ... đến nỗi không thể làm ...)

1/ (not) adjective + *enough* + to-infinitive: cấu trúc này có ý nghĩa ‘(không) đủ (+ tính từ) để làm gì’. Chú ý: chúng ta phải đặt tính từ trước ‘*enough*’. Ví dụ:

- Nam is not tall enough to reach the top of the blackboard.

(Nam không đủ cao để với tay tới đỉnh tấm bảng đen.)

- Mr. Lam is not young enough to play football.

(Ông Lâm không còn đủ trẻ để thi đấu bóng đá.)

- I'm not strong enough to lift this refrigerator.

(Tôi không đủ mạnh để nhấc cái tủ lạnh này lên.)

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta có thể thêm ‘*for somebody*’ vào cấu trúc này: ‘(not) adjective + *enough* + *for somebody* + to-infinitive’: (không) đủ (+ tính từ) để cho ai có thể làm gì. Ví dụ:

- This problem is not easy enough for me to understand.

(Vấn đề này không đủ dễ để tôi có thể hiểu được.)

- This room is not large enough for five people to live in.

(Căn phòng này không đủ rộng để cho năm người có thể ở được.)

2/ **'Too + adjective + to-infinitive'**: cấu trúc này có ý nghĩa 'quá (+ tính từ) đến nỗi không thể làm được'. Ví dụ:

- Nam is too short to reach the top of the blackboard.
(Nam quá thấp đến nỗi không thể với tay tới đỉnh bảng đen.)
- Mr. Lam is too old to play football.
(Ông Lâm quá già không thể thi đấu bóng đá được.)
- I'm too weak to lift this refrigerator.
(Tôi quá yếu không thể nhấc cái tủ lạnh này lên được.)

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta có thể thêm 'for somebody' vào cấu trúc này: 'Too + adjective + for somebody + to-infinitive': 'quá (+ tính từ) đến nỗi người nào không thể làm được'. Ví dụ:

- This refrigerator is too heavy for me to lift.
(Cái tủ lạnh này quá nặng, tôi không thể nhấc lên được.)
- This jacket is too small for you to wear.
(Cái áo khoác này quá nhỏ, bạn không mặc được.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Read the answers and complete the questions in the following conversation. (Hãy đọc câu trả lời rồi hoàn thành các câu hỏi trong đoạn đối thoại sau.)

1. Where do you live ?
I live at 215 Le Loi Street.
2. What time _____ ?
I get up at six o'clock every morning.
3. What _____ then?
Then, I brush my teeth and do morning **exercise** until half past six.
4. When _____ ?
I usually leave for school at **quarter** to seven.
5. How _____ ?
I walk to school. My house is only two **blocks** from my school.
6. Where _____ ? At home or at school?
I usually have breakfast at home, but sometimes at the school canteen.
7. How long _____ ?
School **lasts** from half past seven to eleven o'clock.
8. How many **lessons** _____ in the morning?
I usually have three lessons in the morning.

9. How often _____ ?

I have English lessons three times a week.

10. Which subject _____ best?

I must say it's Math. I like it best of all the subjects.

EXERCISE 2: Complete the passage with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

You can use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành đoạn văn sau với hình thức thích hợp của động từ trong khung. Các em chỉ dùng mỗi động từ một lần thôi.)

<i>dance</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>live</i>	<i>stay</i>	<i>go</i>
<i>manage</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>travel</i>	<i>study</i>

Mai is a 14-year-old schoolgirl. She (1) _____ in Ho Chi Minh City. She (2) _____ at a high school for the arts. She (3) _____ and she also (4) _____ the piano and the flute. Her father is a businessman. He (5) _____ an import-export company. He often (6) _____ abroad on business. Mai and her mother sometimes (7) _____ with him to different countries. They often (8) _____ at expensive hotels and (9) _____ delicious food. Mai (10) _____ Korea a lot because it's a beautiful country.

EXERCISE 3: Complete the conversation with the past simple of 'Be'.

Sometimes you must use the negative form. (Hãy hoàn thành bài đối thoại sau với thì quá khứ đơn của động từ 'Be'. Đôi khi các em phải dùng hình thức phủ định.)

Lan: Where (1) were you last week, Ha?

Ha: I (2) _____ in Dalat with my family.

Lan: (3) _____ you in Lang Biang Plateau?

Ha: No, we (4) _____. We (5) _____ around the city center most of the time.

Lan: What (6) _____ the weather like while you (7) _____ there?

Ha: It (8) _____ really cold. We (9) _____ outside much in the evening because the temperature (10) _____ below 10 degrees Celsius.

EXERCISE 4: Complete the passage with the past simple of the verbs in the box. You can use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành đoạn văn với thì quá khứ đơn của động từ trong khung. Các em chỉ dùng mỗi động từ một lần thôi.)

<i>climb</i>	<i>build</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>give</i>	<i>start</i>
<i>tell</i>	<i>be</i>	<i>learn</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>spend</i>

Surviving the Tsunami

(Sống sót sau trận sóng thần)

Sumatra December 26th, 2004

I was near the beach when I (1) saw the wave. I ran home and (2) _____ my family about it. We (3) _____ up a hill and (4) _____ two nights under some trees. Some people there (5) _____ my family food and water. A week later, we (6) _____ back to our village, but there was nothing there.

We met some friends from the village and we (7) _____ that many people (8) _____ dead.

We moved to my grandmother's village in the mountains. We (9) _____ a new house, and my father (10) _____ a new job.

EXERCISE 5: Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses with 'too' or 'enough'. (Hoàn thành câu. Dùng từ cho trong ngoặc với 'too' hoặc 'enough'.)

1. Anna is very weak. I don't think she can do this job.
 - a. (strong) Anna is not strong enough to do this job.
 - b. (weak) Anna is too weak to do this job.
2. This tea is very hot. I can't drink it now.
 - a. (hot) This tea is _____
 - b. (cool) This tea is not _____
3. The room is very dark. I can't read the book.
 - a. (dark) The room is _____ the book.
 - b. (light) The room is not _____ the book.
4. I feel sick. I don't want to eat anything.
 - a. (sick) I feel _____ anything.
 - b. (well) I don't feel _____ anything.
5. Tom is only five years old. He can't stay home by himself.
 - a. (old) Tom is not _____ by himself.
 - b. (young) Tom _____ by himself.
6. I'm not quick, so I can't be a good goalkeeper.
 - a. (slow) I'm _____ a good goalkeeper.
 - b. (quick) I'm not _____ a good goalkeeper.
7. Ba is very fat. I don't think he can wear this small pullover.
 - a. (thin) Ba is not _____ this small pullover.
 - b. (fat) Ba is _____ this small pullover.
8. This job needs lots of intelligence. I don't think Fred can do it.
 - a. (intelligent) Fred is not _____ this job.
 - b. (stupid) Fred is _____ this job.

9. Teaching small children needs lots of **patience**. You really cannot do it.
 a. (impatient) You're _____ small children.
 b. (patient) You're not _____ small children.
10. We can't buy a car. We don't have enough money.
 a. (rich) We're not _____ a car.
 b. (poor) We're _____ a car.

EXERCISE 6: Complete the answer in each dialogue. Use the word in parentheses with 'too' or 'not ... enough'. (Hoàn thành câu trả lời trong mỗi bài đối thoại sau. Dùng từ cho trong ngoặc với 'too' hoặc 'not ... enough'.)

1. A: Can you hear the **announcement**?
 B: No, I'm **afraid** not. This place *too noisy for me to hear* the announcement. (noisy)
2. A: Can you travel **everywhere** by taxi?
 B: No, I can't. I'm *not rich enough to travel* everywhere by taxi. (**rich**)
3. A: Can we go swimming today?
 B: No, I'm afraid not. The weather is _____ swimming today. (warm)
4. A: Can you help me with my homework, Mom?
 B: I'm sorry. I'm _____ you now. (busy)
5. A: Can your grandfather go to work these days?
 B: No, he can't. He's _____ these days. (young)
6. A: Do you think that Lan can **solve** that problem?
 B: I don't think so. She's _____ that problem. (**smart**)
7. A: Can you buy me a laptop, Dad?
 B: No, I can't **afford** it. A laptop is _____. (expensive)
8. A: Do you think this **suitcase** can **hold** all of my clothes?
 B: **Of course** not. It's _____ all of your clothes. (**large**)
9. A: Can I **put on** these shoes?
 B: No, I don't think so. These shoes are _____. (small)
10. A: Can I get a **scholarship**?
 B: I'm afraid not. You're _____ a scholarship. (**intelligent**)

EXERCISE 7: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: Your mother _____ to be very busy.

- A. **seem** B. seems C. to seem D. is seeming

Đáp án: B. seems

1. Tom _____ everyone in his office.
A. knowing B. knows C. to know D. known
2. This house _____ to my grandfather.
A. belongs B. belonging C. belong D. is belonging
3. How often _____ shopping for the family?
A. do your Mom go B. does your Mom goes
C. goes your Mom D. does your Mom go
4. 'I was on **vacation** in Hue last month.' 'How long _____ there?'
A. did you be B. are you
C. were you D. have you been
5. They _____ TV **until** eleven o'clock last night.
A. watch B. watched C. have watched D. are watching
6. It was a beautiful Sunday, and we _____ our **trip** to the **countryside**.
A. enjoyed B. are enjoying C. enjoy D. have enjoyed
7. They _____ in Hue for five years. After that, they moved to this city.
A. lived B. live C. were living D. have lived
8. I felt _____ to go out, so I stayed home.
A. very tired B. so tired C. tired enough D. too tired
9. I'll buy you a motorbike when you're _____ to ride it.
A. enough old B. old enough C. very old D. too old
10. I can't **put this shirt on**. It's _____ for me.
A. enough small B. small enough
C. too small D. so small

EXERCISE 8: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. Each of my friends have a different **character**.
A B C D
2. Lien seems too reserved to having any friends.
A B C D
3. The birthday party were a success; everybody were very **happy**.
A B C D
4. Miss Mai, I'd like you meet my mother.
A B C D
5. 'How often does your Dad goes on a business trip?' 'Once a month.'
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
beauty: vẻ đẹp		beautiful: xinh đẹp	beautifully: xinh đẹp
difference: sự khác nhau	differ (from): khác với	different: khác nhau	differently: khác nhau
generosity: sự hào phóng; sự rộng lượng		generous: hào phóng; rộng lượng	generously: một cách hào phóng
humor: sự hoặc tính hài hước		humorous: khôi hài humorless: không có óc khôi hài	humorously: một cách khôi hài
luck: vận may		lucky: may mắn unlucky: không may mắn	luckily: một cách may mắn unluckily: không may
society: xã hội	socialize (with): hòa đồng với	sociable: thích hòa đồng; thân thiện	
volunteer: người tình nguyện	volunteer: tình nguyện	voluntary: tự nguyện	voluntarily: một cách tự nguyện

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: No one has ever known the truth of his death. (true)

- Thanks to the _____ of our parents, we have almost everything we like. (generous)
- I like people who have a sense of _____. (humorous)
- My younger brother draws _____. He wishes to become an artist. (beauty)
- The car hit a lamp post. _____, no one was hurt. (lucky)
- Many _____ have taken part in the Green Summer Program. (voluntary)
- Your son is rather reserved. He should _____ more. (sociable)
- Each of them solved the problem _____. (different)
- We were all amazed at the _____ of the river. (beautiful)
- We need your help! Please give _____! (generous)
- Did he help you _____ or did you ask him to do it? (volunteer)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

characters (n): tính cách
 annoys (v): làm bực tức
~~next-door~~ (adj): cạnh nhà
 reserved (adj): dè dặt; kín đáo
 outgoing (adj): thích hòa đồng
 orphanage (n): nhà nuôi trẻ mồ côi
hard-working (adj): chăm chỉ

- Hue is my next-door **neighbor**. We have lived **next to each other** for a long time.
- The **whole** class went to a(n) _____ to help and play with the children there.
- All of** the teachers **like** Nam because he's a _____ student.
- Kindness** is one of Mai's _____ that makes her **popular** with her friends.
- If **someone** is _____, he or she does not want to show **feelings** or **express opinions**.
- Vinh is a(n) _____ student; he enjoys **meeting** people and making more friends.
- It really _____ me when people **forget** to say thank you.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Add 's' or 'es' to the following verbs and put them in the right column according to the pronunciation of their ending '-s / -es'. (Hãy thêm 's' hoặc 'es' vào các động từ sau và đặt chúng vào cột thích hợp tùy theo cách đọc '-s / -es' cuối động từ.)

talk	try	draw	catch	go	kiss	learn	drink	swim	eat
buy	carry	play	think	hope	fix	wash	teach	speak	visit
see	push	live	know	tell	meet	come	prefer	press	annoy

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
talks	plays	catches

EXERCISE 2: Add ‘-ed’ to the following verbs and put them in the right column according to the pronunciation of their ending ‘-ed’. (Hãy thêm ‘-ed’ vào các động từ sau và đặt chúng vào cột thích hợp tùy theo cách đọc ‘-ed’ cuối động từ.)

seem	receive	like	smile	visit	love	finish	turn	describe
listen	complete	talk	excuse	ask	work	enjoy	prefer	play
annoy	help	cause	affect	answer	cross	laugh	study	pass
look	carry	need	thank	lift	join	wait	decide	arrive
add	waste	watch						

[t]	[d]	[ɪd]
liked	seemed	visited



downloadsachmienphi.com

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

Unit

2

MAKING ARRANGEMENTS (Sắp xếp công việc)

VOCABULARY

- agree [ə'gri:] (v) : đồng ý
- agreement [ə'gri:mənt] (n) : sự đồng ý

Ví dụ: You need to get your parents' agreement before you take part in the trip.
(Bạn phải có được sự đồng ý của cha mẹ trước khi bạn tham gia chuyến đi.)

- arrange [ə'reɪndʒ] (v) : sắp đặt

Ví dụ: I must arrange my work so that I can have time to play my favorite sport.
(Tôi phải sắp đặt công việc để có thể có thời gian chơi môn thể thao yêu thích.)

- arrangement [ə'reɪndʒmənt] (n) : sự sắp đặt
- assist [ə'sɪst] (v) : giúp đỡ

Ví dụ: He will assist you in finding somewhere to open a shop.

(Ông ấy sẽ giúp anh trong việc tìm một chỗ nào đó để mở cửa hàng.)

- assistant [ə'sistənt] (n) : người trợ lý; người giúp việc
- come up with ['kʌm ʌp wið] (v) : đưa ra giải pháp hoặc ý tưởng

Ví dụ: He came up with a new way to recycle used beer cans.

(Anh ấy đã đưa ra một ý tưởng mới để tái chế các lon bia dùng rồi.)

- conduct [kən'dʌkt] (v) : tiến hành; thực hiện

Ví dụ: Scientists are conducting experiments to test the new drug.

(Các nhà khoa học đang tiến hành các cuộc thí nghiệm để kiểm tra loại thuốc mới.)

- commerce ['kɑ:mɜ:rs] (n) : ngành thương mại
- commercial [kə'mɜ:rɪl] (adj) : thuộc về thương mại
- count [kaʊnt] (v) : đếm
- countless ['kaʊntləs] (adj) : vô số

Ví dụ: The drug has saved the lives of countless people.

(Loại thuốc này đã cứu mạng sống cho vô số người.)

- deaf-mute [ˌdeɪfˈmju:t] (n) : người câm điếc
- demonstrate ['dɛmənstreɪt] (v) : biểu diễn

Ví dụ: The teacher demonstrated how to use the new equipment.

(Cô giáo đã biểu diễn cách sử dụng thiết bị mới.)

- demonstration [ˌdɛmənˈstreɪʃn] (n) : sự biểu diễn
- device [dɪˈvaɪs] (n) : một thiết bị máy móc
- directory [dɪˈrɛktəri] (n) : cuốn niên giám điện thoại
- distance ['dɪstəns] (n) : khoảng cách

Ví dụ: My father has to ride a long distance to work every day.

(Ba tôi phải chạy xe máy một chặng đường dài để đến chỗ làm mỗi ngày.)

- downstairs [ˌdaʊnˈstɜ:z] (adv) : ở dưới lầu

Ví dụ: There are three bedrooms upstairs and one downstairs.

(Có ba phòng ngủ trên lầu và một cái ở dưới lầu.)

- emigrate ['emɪgreɪt] (v) : di cư
- emigration ['emɪgreɪʃn] (n) : việc di cư
- exhibit [ɪgˈzɪbɪt] (v) : triển lãm
- exhibition [ˌɛksɪˈbɪʃn] (n) : cuộc triển lãm
- experiment [ɪkˈsperɪmənt] (n) : cuộc thí nghiệm; (v) làm thí nghiệm

Ví dụ: Some people think that it is cruel to experiment on animals.

(Một số người nghĩ rằng làm thí nghiệm trên loài vật là ác độc.)

- finally [ˌfaɪnəli] (adv) : cuối cùng = at last
- invent [ɪnˈvent] (v) : sáng chế
- invention [ɪnˈvenʃn] (n) : một phát minh

Ví dụ: The world has changed rapidly after the invention of the computer.

(Thế giới đã thay đổi nhanh chóng sau khi phát minh ra máy tính.)

- inventor [ɪn'ventər] (n) : nhà phát minh
- message ['mesɪdʒ] (n) : tin nhắn; lời nhắn

Ví dụ: Nga is not home now. Would you like to leave a message?

(Bây giờ Nga không có nhà. Cháu có muốn để lại tin nhắn không?)

- order ['ɔ:dər] (n) : đơn đặt hàng
- stationery ['steɪʃənri] (n) : văn phòng phẩm
- transmit [træns'mɪt] (v) : truyền đi

Ví dụ: The final match will be transmitted live by satellite to many countries.

(Trận chung kết sẽ được truyền trực tiếp bằng vệ tinh đến nhiều nước.)

- upstairs [ˌʌp'sterz] (adv) : ở trên lầu

GRAMMAR

1/ 'Be going to' and 'will'

2/ Present progressive

3/ Adverbs of place

1/ 'Be going to' and 'will'

I/ 'Be going to'

1. Hình thức: 'Be going to + infinitive'

* Câu khẳng định – Affirmative:

I	am	} going to	{	leave
He, She, It	is			study
We, You, They	are			meet

* Câu phủ định – Negative:

I	am not	} going to	{	leave
He, She, It	is not			study
We, You, They	are not			meet

* Câu hỏi – Question:

Am	I	} going to	{	leave?
Is	he, she, it			study?
Are	we, you, they			meet?

2. Cách dùng:

a/ Chúng ta dùng 'Be going to' để diễn tả một dự định sẽ làm trong tương lai. Ví dụ:

- 'Why did you buy so much food?' 'I'm going to have some friends to dinner.'
(*'Tại sao chị mua nhiều thức ăn thế?' 'Tôi sắp có một vài người bạn đến ăn tối.'*)

- Mary is packing her suitcase. She's going to leave for Paris tomorrow.

(*Mary đang xếp đồ vào va li. Cô ấy sẽ đi Paris ngày mai.*)

b/ Chúng ta cũng dùng 'Be going to' để diễn tả việc gần như chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra. Ví dụ:

- 'The sky is full of black clouds!' 'Yes. It's going to rain!'

(*'Bầu trời đầy mây đen!' 'Vâng. Trời sắp mưa rồi!'*)

- That drunk man can't walk! He's going to fall!

(*'Người say kia không thể bước nổi! Anh ta sắp ngã!'*)

II/ 'Will'

1. Hình thức:

* **Câu khẳng định – Affirmative:**

I, You, He, She, It { 'll } do it.
We, They { will }

* **Câu phủ định – Negative:**

I, You, He, She, It { won't } do it.
We, They { will not }

* **Câu hỏi – Question:**

Will { I, you, he, she, it } do it?
{ we, they }

2. Cách dùng:

a/ Chúng ta dùng 'will' để diễn tả một hành động sẽ làm, nhưng không có dự định trước. Ví dụ:

- 'I'm feeling very tired.' 'Take a rest! I'll do the washing up for you.'

(*'Tôi cảm thấy quá mệt.' 'Hãy nghỉ ngơi đi! Tôi sẽ rửa chén bát cho.'*)

- 'Have you fix the dripping faucet?' 'Oh no, I forgot! I'll do it now!'

(*'Anh đã sửa cái vòi nước bị chảy chưa?' 'Ôi, tôi quên mất! Tôi sẽ làm ngay bây giờ!'*)

b/ Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng 'will' trong câu hỏi để yêu cầu người khác làm việc gì. Ví dụ:

- 'Will you take me to the office today, Bill?' 'Sure. I will.'

(*'Anh sẽ chở tôi đến văn phòng hôm nay chứ Bill?' 'Được thôi. Tôi sẽ chở.'*)

- 'Will you please lend me that magazine?' 'Yes. There you are.'

(*'Anh làm ơn cho mượn tờ báo kia được không?' 'Vâng. Đây này.'*)

2/ Present progressive (Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

I/. Hình thức:

* Câu khẳng định – Affirmative:

I	am	} leaving studying
He, She, It	is	
We, You, They	are	

* Câu phủ định – Negative:

I	am not	} leaving studying
He, She, It	isn't	
We, You, They	aren't	

* Câu hỏi – Question:

Am	I	} leaving? studying?
Is	he, she, it	
Are	we, you, they	

II/ Cách dùng:

a/ Chúng ta dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra lúc ta đang nói. Ví dụ:

- Listen! Someone is crying!

(Lắng nghe kìa! Có ai đang khóc!)

- Paul is in the garden. He's playing with his children.

(Paul đang ở ngoài vườn. Anh ta đang nô đùa với các con.)

b/ Chúng ta cũng dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói hành động sắp làm trong tương lai. Chúng ta thường dùng thêm thời gian trong cách dùng này. Ví dụ:

- We're going to a restaurant this evening. Would you like to join us?

(Chúng sẽ đi ăn nhà hàng tối nay. Bạn có đi với chúng tôi không?)

- Sorry, I can't see you tomorrow morning. I'm having an important meeting.

(Rất tiếc tôi không thể gặp anh sáng mai được. Tôi sẽ có một cuộc họp quan trọng.)

3/ Adverbs of place (Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn)

* 'Adverbs of place' cho chúng ta biết vị trí, nơi chốn mà một hành động xảy ra. 'Adverbs of place' có thể là một từ hoặc một nhóm từ. Ví dụ:

here: ở đây	indoors: trong nhà
there: ở kia; ở đó	outdoors: ngoài trời
upstairs: trên lầu	in the garden: trong vườn
downstairs: dưới lầu	at the end of the garden: cuối vườn
inside: bên trong	on the hill: trên đồi
outside: bên ngoài	under the water: dưới nước

* **'Adverbs of place'** thường được đặt ở vị trí cuối câu. Ví dụ:

- Please come and sit *here*. (Vui lòng đến ngồi ở đây.)
- It's warm enough to eat *outside*. (Thời tiết đủ ấm để ăn ngoài trời.)
- It's raining. We should stay *indoors*.
(Trời đang mưa. Chúng ta nên ở trong nhà thôi.)
- A church stood *on the hill*. (Một ngôi nhà thờ đứng ở trên đồi.)

CHÚ Ý: Đôi khi chúng ta cũng có thể đặt trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn ở đầu câu. Ví dụ:

- *At the end of the garden* there was a very tall tree.
(Ở cuối vườn có một cây rất cao.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Miss Mai is a very busy manager. She's going to do a lot of work tomorrow. Read her notes and make complete sentences with '*Be going to*'.
(Cô Mai là một giám đốc rất bận rộn. Cô ấy sẽ làm nhiều việc ngày mai. Hãy đọc những ghi chú của cô và viết câu hoàn chỉnh với '*Be going to*'.)

NOTES:

- 6:30 exercise at the Gym
- 7:30 have breakfast with an important customer
- 8:00 attend a meeting
- 9:30 meet Mr. Rich at the airport
- 11:30 eat lunch with Mr. Rich
- 13:30 visit the fashion fair
- 15:30 receive some guests at the office
- 18:30 open the company party

1. *She's going to exercise at the Gym at 6:30.*
2.
3.
4.
5.

6.
7.
8.

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence using the correct form of 'Be going to' with one verb in the box. You can use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của 'Be going to' với một động từ trong khung. Chỉ dùng mỗi động từ một lần.)

<i>build</i>	<i>leave</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>visit</i>	<i>walk</i>
<i>give</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>start</i>	<i>be</i>

1. Mr. Quang is going to leave for Singapore next Saturday.
2. The students in this class _____ a test in Biology tomorrow.
3. Mike _____ Brenda to a restaurant for dinner tonight.
4. I got a message from Lisa this morning. She _____ us this evening.
5. Tom and Amanda intend to get married next month. They _____ a big reception in a restaurant.
6. Alice has succeeded in the job interview. She _____ her new job on Monday.
7. We have saved enough money. We _____ a new house this month.
8. The sun is rising brightly. It _____ another warm day.
9. The beach is not far from our hotel, so we _____ there.
10. '_____ you _____ a speech at their wedding?' 'Yes, I am. They invited me to do so.'

EXERCISE 3: Complete each sentence using 'will' or 'won't' with one verb in the box. Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu dùng 'will' hoặc 'won't' với một động từ trong ngoặc. Hãy dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>do</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>listen</i>	<i>tell</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>help</i>	<i>come</i>	<i>pay</i>	<i>close</i>

1. I don't think the exam will be very difficult.
2. Mr. Dawson is on holiday in Europe. He _____ back until next Tuesday.
3. I _____ anyone what you told me. I promise.
4. _____ you _____ the window, please? It's very cold in here.
5. 'Did you post my letter?' 'Oh no, I forgot! I _____ it today.'
6. Can you lend me 100.000 dong? I _____ you back by Sunday. I promise.
7. I think he _____ you with the money. He's so rich and generous.
8. 'I'm very hungry, Mom!' 'OK. I _____ you something to eat.'

9. I've tried to give him advice, but he _____ .
 10. 'What would you like to drink?' 'I _____ white coffee, please.'

EXERCISE 4: Complete each sentence with the present progressive of a verb in the box. Use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi câu với thì hiện tại tiếp diễn của một động từ trong khung. Hãy dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>not rain</i>	<i>work</i>	<i>get</i>	<i>wait</i>	<i>happen</i>
<i>make</i>	<i>try</i>	<i>not eat</i>	<i>study</i>	<i>not use</i>

1. I am waiting for a letter from Na, my cousin.
 2. Be quiet, please! You _____ a lot of noise!
 3. The students _____ hard to pass their exams.
 4. Do you know what _____ over there? Why are there so many people?
 5. You can work on my computer. I _____ it now.
 6. ' _____ your father _____ this week?' 'No, he's on vacation.'
 7. 'My brother is a student at university.' 'Is he? What _____ he _____?'
 8. Sarah wants to lose weight, so this week she _____ lunch.
 9. We don't need to take an umbrella. It _____ now.
 10. Please, turn on the light! It _____ dark.

EXERCISE 5: Choose the correct word in parentheses to complete each sentence. (Hãy chọn từ thích hợp để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

1. This is not my car. Mine is over there. (here / there)
 2. This is my apartment. I've lived here for over three years. (here / there)
 3. 'Where are the children? I can't see them on the ground floor?'
 'They're playing _____.' (downstairs / upstairs)
 4. Our house is not very large. We sleep upstairs, and we eat and receive guests
 _____ . (downstairs / upstairs)
 5. Can you go _____ and see if it's raining? (outside / inside)
 6. He searched the bag carefully, but there was nothing _____. (outside / inside)
 7. You should let your children play _____ more. Fresh air is good for
 them. (indoors / outdoors)
 8. Most plants grow well in the open air, but some plants can also grow _____
 _____. (indoors / outdoors)
 9. Last month, our class went camping in a small village and we had a great
 time _____. (here / there)
 10. I cannot leave this place. I must wait _____ until my mother comes back.
 (here / there)

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: Your mother _____ to be very busy.

- A. seem B. seems C. to seem D. is seeming

Đáp án: B. seems

1. 'This bag is too heavy!' 'Well, I _____ it for you.'
A. carry B. am carrying
C. 'll carry D. am going to carry
2. Listen! I think the telephone _____.
A. ringing B. rings C. will ring D. is ringing
3. 'Can you go fishing with us tomorrow?' 'Sorry, I've made some arrangements. I _____ my room.'
A. clean B. will clean C. cleaned D. am going to clean
4. 'Where's your mother?' 'She's in the kitchen _____.'
A. cooks B. cooking
C. is going to cook D. will cook
5. 'This clock is very late.' 'Yes, I know. I _____ a new one.'
A. am going to buy B. buy
C. was buying D. must be buying
6. This food tastes horrible! I _____ it!
A. am going to eat B. am not going to eat
C. will eat D. don't eat
7. Please, don't disturb my father now! He _____ !
A. works B. will work C. is working D. worked
8. All living things _____ water to survive.
A. need B. are needing C. needing D. needs
9. Look! The leaves _____ from the trees! The fall has come.
A. fall B. are falling C. will fall D. were falling
10. When the fall comes, leaves _____ from trees.
A. fall B. are falling C. fell D. were falling

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

- A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. 'What is your plan this evening?' 'I'm going to watching a movie on TV.'

A B C D

2. I got wet as I was working inside and it suddenly began to rain.

A B C D

3. The robbers stole a car and now they drive out of town.

A B C D

4. 'This is a secret between us.' 'I'm not telling anyone about it. I promise.'

A B C D

5. Carol having a great time on vacation and she doesn't want to come back.

A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
arrangement: sự sắp đặt	arrange: sắp đặt; thu xếp		
assistance: sự trợ giúp assistant: người trợ giúp	assist: giúp đỡ		
commerce: thương mại		commercial: thuộc về thương mại	commercially: có tính chất thương mại
	count: đếm	countable: có thể đếm được uncountable: không thể đếm được countless: vô số	
distance: khoảng cách		distant: cách xa; xa xôi	
emigration: sự di cư emigrant: người di cư	emigrate: di cư		
exhibition: cuộc triển lãm	exhibit: triển lãm; trưng bày		
		final: cuối cùng	finally: cuối cùng

invention: một phát minh inventor: nhà phát minh	invent: phát minh; sáng chế		
success: sự thành công	succeed: thành công	successful: thành công unsuccessful: không thành công	successfully: một cách thành công unsuccessfully: không thành công
transmission: sự truyền tín hiệu	transmit: truyền tín hiệu		

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: No one has ever known the truth of his death. (true)

- The experiment was _____, so they had to do it again. (success)
- What is the _____ between the Moon and the Earth? (distant)
- There was a wave of _____ from Europe to America in the 19th century. (emigrate)
- Thomas Watson worked as the only _____ to Alexander G. Bell. (assist)
- The supporters of the team cheered when the referee blew the _____ whistle. (finally)
- Alexander G. Bell was among the greatest _____ of all times. (invent)
- This program is a live _____ from the Olympic Games. (transmit)
- Alexander Bell's invention was _____ successful. (commerce)
- This _____ gives young artists an opportunity to display their work. (exhibit)
- The cost of schooling should be an _____ between the school and parents. (arrange)
- I have warned him _____ times, but he won't listen. (count)
- Confidence is an important element of _____. (succeed)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each blank space in the passage with one of the words in the box. Use each word only once. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi khoảng trống trong đoạn văn sau bằng một từ trong khung. Dùng mỗi từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>interest</i>	<i>inventing</i>	<i>idea</i>
<i>mechanic</i>	<i>steam</i>	<i>kettle</i>

JAMES WATT (1736-1819)

It is said that James Watt developed his (1) idea for the steam engine by watching a boiling (2) _____ in his mother's kitchen and seeing how the (3) _____ pushed things out! He first became interested in machines when he worked as an ordinary (4) _____ at Glasgow University, which had been founded centuries before in 1451. His (5) _____ in the steam engine turned it into one of the most powerful and important machines in the Industrial Revolution.

Throughout his life, he could not stop (6) _____ all kinds of machines, some of which were still being used the early 20th century.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Some of the words in the box are stressed on the first syllable; the others are stressed on the second syllable. Put the words in the right column. (Một số từ trong khung được đọc nhấn ở vần thứ nhất; số còn lại được nhấn ở vần thứ hai. Hãy đặt chúng vào cột thích hợp.)

delivery	stationery	service	message	downstairs
customer	invention	assistant	telephone	commercial
emigrate	distance	arrangement	directory	

Words stressed on the first syllable	Words stressed on the second syllable
stationery	delivery

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. <u>movie</u> | B. <u>over</u> | C. <u>mobile</u> | D. <u>known</u> |
| 2. A. <u>customer</u> | B. <u>conduct</u> | C. <u>public</u> | D. <u>success</u> |
| 3. A. <u>speech</u> | B. <u>deaf</u> | C. <u>speak</u> | D. <u>teach</u> |
| 4. A. <u>where</u> | B. <u>what</u> | C. <u>who</u> | D. <u>why</u> |
| 5. A. <u>minute</u> | B. <u>use</u> | C. <u>mute</u> | D. <u>huge</u> |

PROGRESS TEST 1

(Unit 1 and Unit 2)

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

- Sorry. I can't help you. I'm not strong _____ to carry that bog for you.
A. very B. well C. enough D. too
- They lived in Hanoi _____. They live in Ho Chi Minh City now.
A. this year B. next year C. the next year D. last year
- The sun rises in the _____ and sets in the _____.
A. east / west B. west / east C. south / north D. north / south
- Tommy is only ten years old. He is not _____ enough to drive a car.
A. young B. old C. good D. bad
- There's a good movie _____ at Megastar Theater. Would you like to see it?
A. on B. at C. in D. for
- My mother is a busy businesswoman. She has to _____ the time and the places for her meetings every day.
A. work B. do C. speak D. arrange
- Alexander Graham Bell was able to transmit speech over a long _____.
A. road B. street C. distance D. telephone
- Alexander Graham Bell, assisted by Thomas Watson, _____ many experiments.
A. invented B. conducted C. traveled D. answered

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

- Alexander Graham Bell _____ born on March 3, 1847. (be)
- Mary usually does her homework in the evening, but at the moment she _____ a cartoon on television. (watch)
- My school is not far from my home, so I always _____ there with my friends. (walk)
- I _____ this letter from my friend Nam this morning. (receive)

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. If you have a lot of work to do, you must make _____ for it. (arrange)
2. Bell's _____ of the telephone has changed the world. (invent)
3. His experiments were _____ and the telephone was in commercial use by 1877. (succeed)
4. Thomas Watson was Alexander Graham Bell's _____. (assist)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box. There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

large	favourite	lessons	languages	nice
-------	-----------	---------	-----------	------

My name is Sylvie. I am French, but I live in New York. It is a very big city in the United States of America. I am thirteen years old and I am a student in class eight. My school name is George Reed High School. I speak two (1) _____ : English and French. My (2) _____ subject is Maths and my favourite sport is volleyball.

I like my classmates. They are very (3) _____ to me, but Nancy is my best friend. She is a very good student. She loves Computer Studies. At the weekends, she plays computer games. They are fantastic!

I have four brothers and two sisters. We are a (4) _____ family, aren't we? My father works in a bank and my mother works in a school. I love my family so much. At the weekends, we go to the movies together.

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452 in the area of Florence, Italy. He did many things. He was a scientist. He was an inventor - he made new things. He was a musician. He was a mathematician. He was an architect - he knew how to plan the construction of buildings. He knew about animals. He knew about plants. He could do many things well. He was very talented.

He was famous for his painting. He painted the *Mona Lisa* and *The Last Supper*. They are his most famous paintings. Many people know about them. He started working on *The Last Supper* in 1495 in Milan. He finished it in 1498. He started working on the *Mona Lisa* in 1503 in Italy. He finished it a short time before he died. It is now in France.

Leonardo had many ideas for inventions. He drew plans for a helicopter. He drew plans for a tank. He had an idea for a calculator. He had an idea for making solar power, which is power that comes from the sun. Leonardo died in 1519.

1. Leonardo da Vinci was an English scientist.
2. Leonardo da Vinci finished the *Mona Lisa* a short time before he died.
3. It took Leonardo da Vinci five years to paint *The Last Supper*.
4. Solar power is the power that comes from the moon.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. Your daughter is too young to go to work.
Your daughter is not
2. I think you should join our English Speaking Club.
Why don't ?
3. I think my English is too bad to join the Club.
I don't think my English
4. Let's meet outside the theater.
Shall ?

Unit

3

downloadsachmienphi.com
AT HOME
Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online
(Trong nhà)

VOCABULARY

- bead [bi:d] (n) : hạt cườm (để trang trí)
- beneath [br'ni:θ] (prep) : bên dưới
Ví dụ: We found her letter beneath a pile of papers.
(Chúng tôi tìm thấy lá thư của bà ấy bên dưới một chồng báo.)
- beside [bi'said] (prep) : bên cạnh
Ví dụ: The boy who sits beside me in class is very good at mathematics.
(Cậu con trai ngồi cạnh tôi trong lớp rất giỏi môn toán.)
- between [br'twi:n] (prep) : ở giữa (hai người hoặc hai vật)
Ví dụ: In this photograph, I stood between my father and my mother.
(Trong hình chụp này, tôi đứng giữa ba tôi và mẹ tôi.)
- bowl [bəʊl] (n) : cái chén, cái bát, cái tô
- cause [kɔ:z] : (v) gây ra; (n) nguyên nhân
Ví dụ: The police are trying to find out what caused the fire.
(Cảnh sát đang cố gắng tìm ra điều gì đã gây ra vụ cháy.)

- chemical [ˈkemɪkl] (n) : hóa chất
- chore [tʃɔːr] (n) : công việc hàng ngày

Ví dụ: All the members of my family share the household chores.

(Tất thành viên trong gia đình tôi đều chia sẻ công việc nhà.)

- coffee table [ˈkɒfi ˈteɪbl] (n) : bàn thấp (chung với bộ ghế xa-lông)
- community [kəˈmjuːnəti] (n) : cộng đồng
- community center [kəˈmjuːnəti ˈsentər] (n): nhà sinh hoạt của khu phố
- couch [kaʊtʃ] (n) : cái đi-văng; cái trường kỷ
- counter [ˈkaʊntər] (n) : cái quầy
- cupboard [ˈkʌbəd] (n) : tủ đựng ly chén
- cushion [ˈkʊʃn] (n) : cái nệm ghế
- danger [ˈdeɪndʒər] (n) : sự nguy hiểm
- dangerous [ˈdeɪndʒərəs] (adj) : nguy hiểm

Ví dụ: It's very dangerous to drive fast on icy roads.

(Lái xe nhanh trên mặt đường đóng băng thì rất nguy hiểm.)

- destroy [diˈstrɔɪ] (v) : hủy hoại

Ví dụ: The fire destroyed most of the houses in that area.

(Trận hỏa hoạn đã hủy hoại hầu hết những ngôi nhà trong khu vực đó.)

- destruction [diˈstrʌkʃn] (n) : sự hủy hoại
- dish rack [ˌdɪʃ ˈræk] (n) : giá đựng chén bát (= plate rack)
- drug [drʌɡ] (n) : thuốc chữa bệnh
- electric [ɪˈlektɹɪk] (adj) : chạy bằng điện
- electrical [ɪˌlektɹɪkl] (adj) : chạy bằng điện
- electricity [ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti] (n) : điện năng

Ví dụ: Many people are living in this part of the city with no electricity or running water.

(Nhiều người đang sống ở khu vực này của thành phố mà không có điện và nước máy.)

- fire [ˈfaɪər] (n) : vụ cháy; ngọn lửa
- folder [ˈfouldər] (n) : bìa để đựng giấy tờ hoặc hồ sơ
- frying pan [ˈfraɪɪŋ pæn] (n) : cái chảo
- household [ˈhaʊshəʊld] (n) : gia đình; (adj) trong gia đình
- include [ɪnˈkluːd] (v) : bao gồm

Ví dụ: Her job includes typing letters and answering the telephones.

(Công việc của cô ấy bao gồm đánh máy thư và trả lời điện thoại.)

- injure ['ɪndʒər] (v) : làm bị thương
Ví dụ: A bomb exploded in the street and injured many people.
(*Một quả bom đã nổ trên đường phố và làm nhiều người bị thương.*)
- lock [lɒk] : (n) ổ khóa; (v) khóa lại
Ví dụ: You should lock your bike carefully or it'll get stolen.
(*Bạn nên khóa xe máy cẩn thận nếu không thì nó sẽ bị mất cắp.*)
- match [mætʃ] (n) : que diêm
- object ['ɔ:bʒɪkt] (n) : một đồ vật
Ví dụ: She keeps all of her precious objects in the safe.
(*Bà ấy cất giữ tất cả những món đồ quý giá trong tủ sắt.*)
- opposite ['ɑ:pəzət] (prep) : đối diện với
Ví dụ: There is a stationery store opposite the school.
(*Có một cửa hàng bán văn phòng phẩm đối diện trường học.*)
- poster ['pəʊstər] (n) : tranh cổ động; tranh quảng cáo
- precaution [pri'keɪʃn] (n) : sự cảnh giác
Ví dụ: Many accidents happen only because of the lack of safety precautions.
(*Nhiều tai nạn xảy ra chỉ vì thiếu những sự cảnh giác về an toàn.*)
- reach [ri:tʃ] (n) : tầm tay; (v) với tới; đến nơi
Ví dụ: All of the medicines should be kept out of the reach of children.
(*Tất cả thuốc men nên được cất giữ ngoài tầm tay của trẻ em.*)
- rice cooker [raɪs 'kʊkər] (n) : bếp cơm điện
- rug [rʌg] (n) : tấm thảm
- safe [seɪf] (adj) : an toàn
- safety ['seɪfti] (n) : sự an toàn
Ví dụ: People are worried about the safety of the missing boy.
(*Người ta đang lo lắng về sự an toàn của cậu bé bị mất tích.*)
- saucepan ['sɔ:spæn] (n) : cái nồi có nắp đậy
- scissors ['sɪzəz] (plural noun): cái kéo
- sink [sɪŋk] (n) : chậu rửa chén bát
- socket ['sɔ:kɪt] (n) : ổ cắm điện
- soft drink [sɔ:ft 'drɪŋk] (n) : nước giải khát
- steamer ['sti:mər] (n) : nồi hấp
- stove [stəʊv] (n) : cái bếp = cooker
- suitable ['su:təbl] (adj) : thích hợp
Ví dụ: Some television programs are not suitable for young children.
(*Một số chương trình truyền hình không thích hợp với trẻ em.*)

GRAMMAR

1/ Reflexive pronouns

2/ Modals: *must, have to, ought to*

3/ *Why - Because*

1/ Reflexive pronouns

(Đại từ phản thân)

* *Các đại từ phản thân và đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngữ (Subject pronouns):*

Subject pronouns	Reflexive pronouns
I	Myself
You	Yourself
He	Himself
She	Herself
It	Itself
We	Ourselves
You	Yourselves
They	Themselves

* **Cách dùng:**

a/ Chúng ta dùng đại từ phản thân khi nói về một hành động gây ra cho chính chủ ngữ. Trong cách dùng này, đại từ phản thân thường trực tiếp theo sau động từ. Ví dụ:

- Tom hurt himself falling off his bike.

(Tom bị thương khi ngã xe đạp. = Tom làm chính nó bị thương ...)

- Mrs. Tam burned herself while she was frying fish.

(Bà Tâm bị bỏng trong khi đang chiên cá. = Bà tự làm mình bỏng ...)

- 'Who taught you to play the guitar?' 'Nobody. I taught myself.'

(Ai đã dạy bạn chơi đàn ghi-ta? 'Không ai cả. Tôi tự học. = Tôi dạy chính tôi.)

b/ Chúng ta cũng dùng đại từ phản thân để nhấn mạnh chính người nào tự mình làm việc gì. Trong cách dùng này, đại từ phản thân có thể đứng sát sau chủ ngữ hoặc ở vị trí cuối câu. Ví dụ:

- Fiona said she *herself* saw that man take her motorbike.

(Fiona nói rằng chính mắt cô thấy người đàn ông đó lấy xe gắn máy của cô.)

- Lan is only thirteen, but she *herself* can cook a good meal.

(Lan chỉ mới mười ba, nhưng bạn ấy có thể tự nấu một bữa ăn ngon lành.)

- 'Can you help me with this homework, Dad?' 'No, you must do it yourself.'
(*Bố có thể giúp con làm bài tập này nhé?* 'Không, con phải tự làm lấy.')
- The workmen didn't come, so Terry and Lisa had to repair the roof *themselves*.
(*Mấy người thợ không đến, thế nên Terry và Lisa phải tự sửa lấy mái nhà.*)

c/ '**Each other**' và đại từ phản thân: '*each other*' có nghĩa là '*lẫn nhau*', khi ta muốn nói hai người hoặc một nhóm người làm việc gì cho nhau. Hãy phân biệt cách dùng '*each other*' và đại từ phản thân trong các ví dụ sau:

- Van looks at Mai and Mai looks at Van. They look at *each other*.
(*Vân nhìn Mai và Mai nhìn Vân. Họ nhìn lẫn nhau.*)
- Van and Mai are in front of the mirror. They look at *themselves*.
(*Vân và Mai đang đứng trước gương. Họ tự nhìn chính mình.*)
- John writes to Ann and Ann writes to John. They write to *each other*.
(*John viết thư cho Ann và Ann viết thư cho John. Họ viết thư cho nhau.*)
- Nobody else writes the letter. John writes it *himself*.
(*Không ai viết lá thư đó. Chính John viết nó.*)

2/ Modals: **must, have to, ought to**

(Động từ khiếm khuyết: **must, have to, ought to**)

1/ '**Must**' and '**Have to**': Chúng ta dùng '**Must + bare infinitive**' hoặc '**Have / Has to + infinitive**' khi muốn diễn tả người nào cần phải làm việc gì. Ví dụ:

- It's late! We must go now!
Or: It's late! We have to go now!
(*Đã muộn rồi! Chúng ta phải đi bây giờ thôi!*)
- I must go to the bank before it closes.
Or: I have to go to the bank before it closes.
(*Tôi phải đến ngân hàng trước khi nó đóng cửa.*)
- Jenny is a telephone operator. She must answer a lot of phone calls every day.
Or: ... She has to answer a lot of phone calls every day.
(*Jenny là nhân viên trực tổng đài. Cô ấy phải trả lời nhiều cuộc gọi mỗi ngày.*)

CHÚ Ý:

a/ Trong câu hỏi chúng ta dùng '**Must + subject + bare infinitive?**' hoặc '**Do/Does + subject + have to + infinitive?**'. Ví dụ:

- Must I hand in my report by Thursday?
Or: Do I have to hand in my report by Thursday?
(*Tôi phải nộp bản báo cáo trước thứ năm phải không?*)

- Must my lawyer be present when we sign the contract?

Or: Does my lawyer have to be present when we sign the contract?

(Luật sư của tôi có phải có mặt khi chúng ta ký hợp đồng không?)

b/ Khi muốn diễn tả việc cần phải làm trong quá khứ hoặc tương lai, chúng ta dùng **'Had to'** hoặc **'Will have to'** thay vì dùng **'Must'**. Ví dụ:

- Last week, I was sick, so I *had to* stay home from school for two days.

(Tuần trước tôi bị bệnh, thế nên tôi phải nghỉ học ở nhà hai hôm.)

- When you are in the 12th grade, *you'll have to* study much harder for the final examination.

(Khi bạn học lớp 12, bạn sẽ phải học căng hơn nhiều để chuẩn bị thi cuối cấp.)

c/ Chúng ta dùng **'don't / doesn't have to'** để diễn tả người nào không cần phải làm việc gì. Với tình huống quá khứ, chúng ta dùng **'didn't have to'**, và với tương lai, chúng ta dùng **'won't have to'**. Ví dụ:

- You have to read this passage carefully, but you *don't have to* learn it by heart.

(Các em phải đọc kĩ đoạn văn này, nhưng các em không cần phải học thuộc lòng.)

- Rita *doesn't have to* work on the weekend.

(Rita không phải làm việc vào cuối tuần.)

- Yesterday was a national holiday, so we *didn't have to* go to school.

(Hôm qua là một ngày lễ nghỉ, nên chúng tôi không phải đi học.)

- You can eat dinner by yourself. You *won't have to* wait for me.

(Anh có thể ăn tối một mình. Anh không cần phải chờ tôi.)

2/ **'Ought to' and 'should'**: Chúng ta dùng **'ought to + infinitive'** khi muốn diễn tả người nào nên làm việc gì. Ví dụ:

- You *ought to* stay in bed until you feel completely well.

Or: You *should* stay in bed until you feel completely well.

(Anh nên nằm nghỉ ngơi cho đến khi anh cảm thấy hoàn toàn khỏe.)

- Sheila *ought to* go on a diet. She's getting fat.

Or: Sheila *should* go on a diet. She's getting fat.

(Sheila nên ăn kiêng. Cô ấy đang mập lên.)

* CHÚ Ý: Hình thức phủ định của **'ought to'** là **'ought not to + infinitive'**. Tuy nhiên, người ta ít khi dùng hình thức phủ định và câu hỏi với **'ought to'**.

3/ Why – Because

(Hỏi và đáp với: *Tại sao – Bởi vì*)

Chúng ta thường đặt câu hỏi ‘Tại sao?’ với cấu trúc như sau:

Why + auxiliary + subject + main verb + object? (<i>Why + trợ động từ + chủ ngữ + động từ chính + tân ngữ?</i>)
Or: Why + ‘be’ + subject + adjective or adverb phrase? (<i>Why + ‘be’ + chủ ngữ + tính từ hoặc cụm trạng từ?</i>)

Ví dụ:

- ‘Why does Viet stay up so late every night?’
‘Because he has to prepare for his examination.’
(*Tại sao mỗi đêm Việt thức khuya thế?* ‘Bởi vì bạn ấy phải chuẩn bị cho kì thi.’)
- ‘Why didn’t you come to the last meeting?’
‘Because no one had told me about it.’
(*Tại sao anh không đến dự cuộc họp vừa rồi?* ‘Bởi vì không ai nói cho tôi biết.’)
- ‘Why is Lien often tired in the morning?’
‘Because she usually stays up late watching television.’
(*Tại sao Liên thường hay mệt vào buổi sáng?* ‘Vì cô ấy hay thức khuya xem truyền hình.’)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentences with the right reflexive pronouns. (Hãy hoàn thành câu bằng đại từ phản thân thích hợp.)

- Susan cut herself when she sliced up onions.
- The policeman shot _____ by accident.
- The children can now dress _____.
- We had a great vacation. We enjoyed _____ very much.
- All of you are good football players. Did you teach _____ to play football or did anyone teach you?
- Mr. Hawk cuts _____ every morning when he shaves.
- The dog hurt _____ when it jumped out of the window.
- Be careful, son! You may cut _____ badly with that sharp knife.
- The girl is amusing _____ with her kitten.
- I must blame _____ for that fault.

EXERCISE 2: Complete the sentences with the right reflexive pronoun or with 'each other'. (Hãy hoàn thành câu bằng đại từ phản thân thích hợp hoặc bằng 'each other'.)

Examples:

- I once cut myself badly with that knife.
- I looked at her and she looked at me. We looked at each other.

1. Jack cleaned the room _____. Nobody helped him.
2. No one told Jane the truth. She _____ found it.
3. Tan and I have known _____ for a long time.
4. It is you _____ who is responsible for this mistake.
5. You need Frank and Frank needs you. You need _____.
6. In Vietnam, friends often send greeting cards to _____ before Tet Holiday.
7. The students _____ decorated the classroom with pictures and flowers.
8. We say 'Happy New Year' to _____ when we meet friends on New Year's Day.
9. We can't get back into our flat. We've locked _____ out!
10. James and Helen have had a quarrel. They are not speaking to _____ now.

EXERCISE 3: Read the questions and complete the answers using the reflexive pronouns. (Hãy đọc câu hỏi và hoàn thành câu trả lời bằng cách dùng đại từ phản thân.)

1. 'Who helped Jack do his homework?'
'Nobody. He did it himself.'
2. 'Who painted the room for you?'
'Nobody. I painted _____.'
3. 'Who taught Vy to cook?'
'I think she _____. Nobody taught her.'
4. 'Can you carry that bag for me?'
'Why can't you _____?'
5. 'Who gave you the information about Miss Mai's promotion?'
'Miss Mai _____ to me.'
6. 'Shall I help you clean the room?'
'No, thanks. I'll _____.'
7. 'Did you have your hair cut at the barber's?'
'No, I _____.'
8. 'Who told the detective the truth of the theft?'
'Nobody. He discovered _____.'

EXERCISE 4: Complete each sentence using 'must' with one verb in the box.

Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu dùng 'must' với một động từ trong khung. Hãy dùng mỗi động từ một lần thôi.)

stay	go	leave	be
get	work	spend	help

- I must get up early tomorrow. My flight leaves at seven o'clock.
- Harry must work harder if he wants to earn more money.
- We must go to a restaurant for dinner. There's nothing to eat at home.
- Mary is getting worse and worse marks. She must spend more time on her lessons.
- Susan is in trouble. I must help her.
- You're running a temperature. You must be in bed today.
- We are going camping tomorrow. All of us must leave at school before 7.00 a.m.
- There's not much time left! We must go at once!

EXERCISE 5: Complete each sentence using 'have / has to' or 'don't / doesn't have to' with one verb in the box. Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu dùng 'have / has to' hoặc 'don't / doesn't have to' với một động từ trong khung. Hãy dùng mỗi động từ một lần thôi.)

see	not take	go	not stay	not finish
not hurry	work	not wear	water	practice

- It's very late now. We have to go at once!
- It's shining. We don't have to take a raincoat.
- These plants need water badly. You must water them regularly.
- This is a friendly meeting. You mustn't wear a tie.
- If you want to improve your English, you must practice it every day.
- James has a bad toothache. He must see the dentist today.
- You should go out to get fresh air. You mustn't stay in bed all day.
- It is not urgent. The secretary doesn't have to finish the report immediately.
- The company has extra orders, so everyone must work overtime.
- There's plenty of time. We don't have to hurry !

EXERCISE 6: Your friend, Nam, has some trouble and asks for your advice.

Complete the sentence using 'ought to + infinitive' with the information in parentheses. (Bạn của em là Nam gặp một vài khó khăn và yêu cầu em cho lời khuyên. Hãy hoàn thành mỗi câu dùng 'ought to + infinitive' với thông tin cho trong ngoặc.)

1. Nam: I don't understand the lessons very well!

You : (pay more attention / teacher's explanations)

You ought to pay more attention to the teacher's explanations.

2. Nam: I often feel tired in the morning!

You : (go to bed early every night)

3. Nam: I want to keep fit!

You : (take more physical exercise)

4. Nam: My eyesight is not very good now!

You : (stop watching too much TV)

5. Nam: I want to speak English better.

You : (spend more time practicing it)

6. Nam: I don't know why the teacher is so hard on me!

You : (pay more attention to her lectures)

7. Nam: I want to get better marks at school!

You : (study the lessons carefully and do more homework)

8. Nam: My father doesn't understand my problem.

You : (speak to him about it first)

9. Nam: My Mom has so much housework to do!

You : (help her whenever you can)

10. Nam: I don't know much English vocabulary!

You : (read more and learn each new word several times)

EXERCISE 7: Complete the questions and the answers using 'Why' and 'Because' with the information in parentheses. (Hoàn thành câu hỏi và câu trả lời dùng 'Why' và 'Because' với thông tin trong ngoặc.)

1. (Why / you / be late / this morning? – Because / my alarm / not ring)

Why were you late this morning?

Because my alarm didn't ring.

2. (Why / you / feel / so tired? – Because / I / stay up late / last night)
.....
.....
3. (Why / you / be / so unhappy? – Because / I / get bad marks / on the last test)
.....
.....
4. (Why / you / have a bad headache? – Because / I / watch the late movie / TV / last night)
.....
.....
5. (Why / teacher / get angry / yesterday? – Because / many students / not finish / their homework)
.....
.....
6. (Why / Mai / cry / this morning? – Because / teacher / blame her for the mistake)
.....
.....
7. (Why / Tung / not be / in class / yesterday? – Because / he / be / sick at home)
.....
.....
8. (Why / you / not come / Susan's party / last weekend? – Because / I / go / my hometown with my parents)
.....
.....

EXERCISE 8: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: Your mother _____ to be very busy.

- A. seem B. seems C. to seem D. is seeming

Đáp án: B. seems

1. You _____ ask permission before using this fax machine.
A. have B. ought C. have to D. must to
2. Mr. Hill's health is not good these days. He _____ work too hard!
A. must B. oughtn't to C. have to D. don't have to

3. 'Did you have a good time on vacation?' 'Yes, I really enjoyed _____ a lot.'
A. me B. my C. mine D. myself
4. Anna spends too much money on unimportant things. No one _____ as much money as she does.
A. ought to spend B. have to spend
C. ought spend D. oughtn't to spend
5. To improve your English vocabulary, you _____ as many new words as possible.
A. must to learn B. has to learn
C. should to learn D. ought to learn
6. Kim and Tan are good friends. They always help _____.
A. them B. themselves C. himself D. each other
7. '_____ I to be present before eight o'clock?' 'Yes, it's the best thing to do.'
A. Ought B. Should C. Must D. Have
8. Wendy must type the letters, but she _____ to mail them.
A. shouldn't B. mustn't C. doesn't have D. hasn't
9. 'Why _____ so many videos?' 'Because I'm going to spend my holidays watching them.'
A. rented you B. you rented
C. were you rent D. did you rent
10. It was John _____ who made the suggestion.
A. he B. him C. his D. himself

EXERCISE 9: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. My baby daughter is not old enough to dress her.
A B C D
2. When the robber ran away, the policewoman themselves shot him.
A B C D
3. When I was a child, I must go to bed before 7 o'clock every night.
A B C D
4. Will I must meet our foreign customers at the airport tomorrow morning?
A B C D
5. When Tom studies at university next year, he had to spend more time reading science books.
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
chemistry: ngành hoá học chemical: hóa chất		chemical: thuộc về ngành hóa học	chemically: về mặt hóa học
danger: sự nguy hiểm	endanger: gây nguy hiểm	dangerous: nguy hiểm	dangerously: một cách nguy hiểm
destruction: sự tàn phá	destroy: tàn phá; hủy hoại		
electricity: điện năng electrician: thợ điện	electrify: điện khí hóa	electric: chạy bằng điện electrical: chạy bằng điện	
injury: vết thương	injure: làm bị thương	injured: bị thương	
safety: sự an toàn		safe: an toàn	safely: một cách an toàn

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: The pilot managed to land the plane safely. (safe)

- The kitchen can be a _____ place for children. (danger)
- If you don't pay the bill on time, your _____ will be cut off. (electric)
- Rooney could not play that match because of a knee _____. (injure)
- Survivors of the wreck were brought to _____ by a helicopter. (safe)
- John can play both the acoustic and _____ guitar. (electricity)
- 'What is the _____ symbol for gold?' 'It's Au.' (chemistry)
- The drunk man was driving _____ in the heavy traffic. (danger)
- Fortunately, nobody was badly _____ in the accident. (injure)
- My money is _____ kept in a bank. (safe)
- Doctors and nurses were on the scene of the accident to take care of the _____ people. (injure)
- Xuan hopes to go to medical school, so she's trying to study _____. (chemical)
- This area of the city lacks the essential services, such as water and _____. (electric)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

precaution (n): sự đề phòng
community (n): cộng đồng
include (v): bao gồm
household chores (n): việc vặt trong nhà
opposite (prep): đối diện
between (prep): ở giữa
cushions (n): gối ôm
make sure (v): bảo đảm (rằng ...)

1. My hobbies include reading and listening to music.
2. There was a nice coffee table between the sofa and two armchairs.
3. There is a good relationship between the police and the local community.
4. It takes my mother hours to do household chores everyday.
5. Before leaving the house, you have to make sure all electrical appliances are off.
6. The patient had to stay in hospital overnight, just as a precaution.
7. A couple of colorful cushions were put on the sofa.
8. 'Where's the post office?' 'It's on Le Lai Street, opposite the park. You can't miss it.'

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISE

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

EXERCISE 1: Some of the words in the box are stressed on the first syllable; the others are stressed on the second syllable. Put the words in the right column. (Một số từ trong khung được đọc nhấn ở vần thứ nhất; số còn lại được nhấn ở vần thứ hai. Hãy đặt chúng vào cột thích hợp.)

<i>problem</i>	<i>refrigerator</i>	<i>chemical</i>	<i>electrical</i>	<i>medicine</i>
<i>injury</i>	<i>include</i>	<i>opposite</i>	<i>dangerous</i>	<i>beneath</i>
<i>destroy</i> <i>between</i>				

Words stressed on the first syllable	Words stressed on the second syllable
chemical	electrical

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>cup</u> board | B. <u>cu</u> shion | C. <u>dr</u> ug | D. <u>lu</u> cky |
| 2. A. <u>l</u> ock | B. <u>s</u> ocket | C. <u>al</u> most | D. <u>s</u> oft |
| 3. A. <u>p</u> an | B. <u>l</u> amp | C. <u>a</u> rmchair | D. <u>a</u> pple |
| 4. A. <u>pic</u> ture | B. <u>te</u> acher | C. <u>k</u> itchen | D. <u>pre</u> caution |
| 5. A. <u>sciss</u> ors | B. <u>obj</u> ects | C. <u>kn</u> ives | D. <u>be</u> ads |

Unit

4

OUR PAST (Quá khứ của chúng ta)

VOCABULARY

- appear [əˈpiə] (v) : xuất hiện
 Ví dụ: Many film stars will appear at the film festival.
 (Nhiều ngôi sao điện ảnh sẽ xuất hiện tại liên hoan phim.)
- appearance [əˈpiərəns] (n) : sự xuất hiện
- broken heart [ˈbrʊkn ˈhɑːt] (n) : tâm trạng tan nát cõi lòng
- broken-hearted [ˈbrʊkn ˈhɑːtɪd] (adj) : tan nát cõi lòng
 Ví dụ: She was broken-hearted when her only son died.
 (Bà ấy tan nát cõi lòng khi đứa con trai duy nhất qua đời.)
- burn [bɜːn] – burnt – burnt (burned – burned) (v): cháy; đốt cháy
- cruel [ˈkruːəl] (adj) : độc ác
 Ví dụ: I can't stand people who are cruel to small children.
 (Tôi không chịu nổi những người độc ác với trẻ con.)
- die of [ˈdaɪ əv] (v) : chết vì điều gì
- drop [drɒp] (v) : đánh rơi
- equip [ɪˈkwɪp] (v) : trang bị
- equipment [ɪˈkwɪpmənt] (n) : trang thiết bị
 Ví dụ: The school needs more modern equipment for the gym.
 (Nhà trường cần thêm trang thiết bị hiện đại cho phòng tập thể dục.)
- escape [ɪˈskeɪp] (v) : trốn thoát

Ví dụ: The police say that two men escaped from prison this morning.

(Cảnh sát nói rằng hai người đàn ông đã trốn thoát khỏi nhà tù sáng nay.)

- excite [ɪk'saɪt] (v) : làm phấn khích
- excited [ɪk'saɪtɪd] (adj) : phấn khích; hồi hộp

Ví dụ: The students are very excited about the field trip of the English-speaking Club.

(Các học sinh rất phấn khích về chuyến đi dã ngoại của câu lạc bộ nói tiếng Anh.)

- excitement [ɪk'saɪtmənt] (n) : sự phấn khích
- fairy ['feri] (n) : cô tiên
- fall in love with ['fɔ:l ɪn 'lʌv wɪð] (v) : phải lòng ai
- festival ['festɪvl] (n) : lễ hội
- fit [fɪt] (v) : (quần áo, giày, dép) vừa khít

Ví dụ: Do you think these jeans fit me well?

(Bạn có nghĩ rằng quần bò này vừa khít với tôi không?)

- folk tale ['fɒk teɪl] (n) : truyện cổ dân gian
- graze [greɪz] (v) : gặm cỏ
- harvest ['hɑ:vɪst] (n) : mùa thu hoạch; (v) thu hoạch

Ví dụ: Naturally, all farmers are very busy during the harvest.

(Đương nhiên là tất cả nông dân đều rất bận rộn trong mùa thu hoạch.)

- immediately [ɪ'mi:diətli] (adv) : ngay tức thời
- light – lit – lit [laɪt] (v) : thắp sáng; đốt lên

Ví dụ: He lit a candle and began to read the letter.

(Anh ấy thắp một cây nến và bắt đầu đọc lá thư.)

- look after [lʊk 'æftər] (v) : chăm sóc

Ví dụ: Don't worry about Jimmy; he can look after himself now.

(Đừng lo về Jimmy, bây giờ nó có thể tự chăm sóc bản thân được rồi.)

- magic ['mædʒɪk] (n) : phép thuật
- magical ['mædʒɪkl] (adj) : có phép thuật

Ví dụ: Children often believe that fairies have magical powers.

(Trẻ em thường tin rằng các cô tiên có quyền lực phép thuật.)

- magically ['mædʒɪkli] (adv) : như có phép thuật
- modern ['mɑ:dəm] (adj) : hiện đại; tối tân
- past [pæst] (n) : quá khứ; (adj) thuộc về quá khứ
- rag [ræg] (n) : giẻ rách; áo quần rách rưới
- rope [rəʊp] (n) : dây thừng
- sound [saʊnd] (n) : âm thanh; (v) nghe có vẻ

Ví dụ: It sounds like you've got a bad cold.

(Giọng của anh nghe có vẻ bị cảm nặng.)

- straw [strɔ:] (n) : rơm
- stripe [straɪp] (n) : sọc; vằn
- tie [taɪ] (v) : trói; cột
- tradition [trə'dɪʃn] (n) : truyền thống
- traditional [trə'dɪʃənl] (adj) : theo truyền thống

Ví dụ: In Vietnam, it is traditional for women to wear “ao dài” on special occasions.
(Ở Việt Nam, theo truyền thống phụ nữ mặc áo dài vào những dịp đặc biệt.)

- unfortunate [ʌn'fɔ:rtʃənət] (adj) : không may mắn
- unfortunately [ʌn'fɔ:rtʃənətli] (adv) : không may mắn

Ví dụ: Unfortunately, his taxi got stuck in a traffic jam and therefore he was late for his plane.

(Thật không may là taxi chở anh ta bị vướng vào vụ kẹt xe và do đó anh ta trễ chuyến bay.)

- upset [ʌp'set] (v) : làm ai bức tức; (adj) bức tức

Ví dụ: Don't upset yourself about the accident; just forget about it!

(Đừng tự làm mình bức tức về vụ tai nạn; hãy quên nó đi thôi!)

- wise [waɪz] (adj) : khôn ngoan
- wisdom ['wɪzdəm] (n) : sự khôn ngoan; trí khôn

Ví dụ: My grandfather used to give me words of wisdom.

(Ông tôi thường cho tôi những lời nói khôn ngoan.)

GRAMMAR

1/ Review: Past simple

2/ Used to + infinitive

3/ Prepositions of time

1/ Review: The Past simple

(Ôn tập thì quá khứ đơn)

I/ Hình thức:

a/ Chúng ta thêm ‘-ed’ vào một số lớn động từ khi dùng ở thì quá khứ đơn. Ví dụ:

work	He worked late yesterday.
arrive	They arrived here two days ago.
play	The team played badly.

b/ Một số động từ thông dụng có hình thức bất qui tắc khi dùng ở thì quá khứ đơn. Ví dụ:

see	I saw a car accident this morning.
buy	She bought some flowers.
write	They wrote to each other.

c/ Hình thức quá khứ đơn của động từ 'Be' là 'was / were'.

*** Câu khẳng định – Affirmative:**

I He She It	was	at home yesterday.
We You They	were	

*** Câu phủ định – Negative:**

I He She It	wasn't was not	at school yesterday.
We You They	weren't were not	

*** Câu hỏi – Question:**

Was	I he she it	at school yesterday?
Were	we you they	

II/ Cách dùng:

a/ Chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn để diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra và kết thúc trong quá khứ. Chúng ta thường dùng thời gian như: *yesterday, last year, three months ago, in 2005, on Sunday, at 9 o'clock, ...* . Ví dụ:

- I first met my best friend ten years ago.

(Tôi gặp người bạn thân của tôi lần đầu cách đây 10 năm.)

- We arrived at the airport at 9 o'clock on Monday.

(Chúng tôi đến phi trường lúc 9 giờ ngày thứ hai.)

b/ Chúng ta cũng dùng thì quá khứ đơn để diễn tả một hành động kéo dài bao lâu và đã chấm dứt trong quá khứ. Chúng ta thường dùng thời gian với 'for + thời gian bao lâu'. Ví dụ:

- I studied at a village school for three years. After that, I moved to this city.

(Tôi đã học ở một trường làng trong ba năm. Sau đó tôi chuyển đến thành phố này.)

- My uncle served in the army from 1985 to 2000.

(Chú tôi phục vụ trong quân đội từ năm 1985 đến 2000.)

CHÚ Ý: Xem lại phần cách viết và cách đọc '-ed' trong phần ngữ pháp của Unit 1.

2/ Used to + infinitive

I/ Hình thức: 'used to + động từ nguyên mẫu'

* Câu khẳng định – Affirmative:

I, You, He, She, It	used to	live play work
We, They		

* Câu phủ định – Negative:

I, You, He, She, It	didn't use to	live play work
We, They		

* Câu hỏi – Question:

Did	I, you, he, she, it we, they	use to	live? play? work?
-----	---------------------------------	--------	-------------------------

II/ Cách dùng: Chúng ta dùng 'Used to + động từ nguyên mẫu' để diễn tả một thói quen hoặc một sinh hoạt thông thường trong quá khứ, mà nay không còn làm nữa. Ví dụ:

- We used to live in the country. Now, we live in the city.

(Tôi đã từng sống ở thôn quê. Nay chúng tôi sống ở thành phố.)

- My father used to smoke cigarettes, but he doesn't smoke anymore.

(Ba tôi trước đây từng hút thuốc, nhưng bây giờ không còn hút nữa.)

- 'You live with your aunt now. Did you use to live with your parents?'
'Yes, I did.'

(*'Hiện giờ bạn sống với cô của bạn. Thế trước đây bạn đã từng sống với cha mẹ chứ?' 'Vâng. Tôi đã từng như thế.'*)

3/ Prepositions of time

(Giới từ thời gian)

Trong tiếng Anh, có khá nhiều giới từ được dùng với thời gian. Sau đây chúng ta chỉ khảo sát cách dùng của một số giới từ như: *at, in, on, after, before, between*.

Giới từ	Cách dùng	Ví dụ
at	Dùng với giờ, một số buổi trong ngày hoặc các dịp lễ	At seven o'clock: vào lúc 7 giờ At noon / midday: vào giữa trưa At night: vào ban đêm At midnight: vào lúc nửa đêm At sunset: vào lúc hoàng hôn At Christmas: vào lễ Giáng sinh At Easter: vào lễ Phục sinh
in	Dùng với tháng, năm, mùa, hoặc một số buổi trong ngày	In February: vào tháng Hai In 2008: vào năm 2008 In summer: vào mùa hè In the morning: vào buổi sáng In the afternoon: vào buổi chiều In the evening: vào lúc chiều tối
on	Dùng với thứ trong tuần, ngày trong tháng, ngày cuối tuần, hoặc ngày lễ (có từ 'Day')	On Sunday: vào ngày chủ nhật On May 25 th : vào ngày 25 tháng Năm On the weekend: vào ngày cuối tuần (hoặc: at the weekend) On Christmas Day: vào ngày lễ Giáng sinh On New Year's Day: vào ngày đầu năm mới
after	Dùng trước hầu hết các từ chỉ thời gian, với ý nghĩa 'sau'	After midnight: sau nửa đêm After 9 p.m.: sau 9 giờ tối After Easter: sau lễ Phục sinh
before	Dùng trước hầu hết các từ chỉ thời gian, với ý nghĩa 'trước'	Before 8 a.m.: trước 8 giờ sáng Before noon: trước buổi trưa Before summer: trước mùa hè

between	Dùng trước giờ, thứ, ngày, tháng, năm ... với ý nghĩa 'giữa ...', thường dùng kèm với 'and'	Between 9 and 11 o'clock: giữa 9 và 11 giờ Between Monday and Thursday: giữa thứ hai và thứ năm Between 1995 and 1999: giữa năm 1995 và 1999
----------------	---	--

Ví dụ:

- 'What time did you get here this morning?' 'At 7.30.'
(*Sáng nay bạn đã đến đây lúc mấy giờ?* 'Lúc 7g30'.)
- We often go swimming in summer. (*Chúng tôi thường đi bơi vào mùa hè.*)
- Children always wear new clothes on New Year's Day.
(*Trẻ con luôn mặc quần áo mới vào ngày đầu năm mới.*)
- This club is not open after midnight.
(*Câu lạc bộ này không mở cửa sau nửa đêm.*)
- Where were you before 9 p.m. last night?
(*Anh đã ở đâu trước 9 giờ tối qua?*)
- Workers usually have lunch between 11.00 and 12.30.
(*Công nhân thường dùng cơm trưa giữa 11 và 12g30.*)

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete each sentence with the past simple of a verb in the box. Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với thì quá khứ đơn của động từ trong khung. Hãy dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>tell</i>	<i>not be</i>	<i>watch</i>	<i>get</i>	<i>paint</i>
<i>know</i>	<i>learn</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>hear</i>	<i>not arrive</i>

1. They watched television until twelve o'clock last night.
2. Last year, they _____ their house pink.
3. I _____ how to swim at the age of 10.
4. She _____ nothing but a sandwich all day yesterday.
5. Chris and Vera _____ married in 2005.
6. Mr. Alex _____ at work yesterday morning.
7. We _____ the President speak on television last night.
8. The train from Hanoi to Hue _____ on time this morning.
9. I _____ Tan when we were at primary school.
10. Amanda _____ me about her plan two days ago.

EXERCISE 2: Complete each blank space in the passage with one of the following verbs. Use the past simple and use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi khoảng trống trong đoạn văn với một trong các động từ sau. Dùng thì quá khứ đơn và chỉ dùng mỗi động từ một lần.)

<i>go</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>not stop</i>	<i>arrive</i>	<i>continue</i>
<i>get</i>	<i>give</i>	<i>be</i>	<i>decide</i>	<i>forget</i>

In 1998, Martin and Lucy Thompson (1) decided to drive from Dover, England, to Paris to spend a few days there with some friends. It was a long drive, so they (2) _____ quite a lot of food and drink for the journey, but unfortunately, they (3) _____ to take a map.

They got off the boat in Calais, France and immediately (4) _____ lost, but they (5) _____ driving and (6) _____ to ask for directions. When they got near the border with Switzerland, they knew it (7) _____ the wrong road. They (8) _____ back, this time driving through Luxembourg, then to Brussels. Many hours later, they got to Rotterdam in the Netherlands, and then finally (9) _____ in Bonn, Germany, with no money, food, drink, or petrol. Some kind people (10) _____ them some money and they got back to Dover a week later, after driving more than 1500 kilometres.

EXERCISE 3: Finish the following sentences with a similar meaning by using 'used to', 'didn't use to' or 'Did ... use to?'. (Hoàn thành các câu sau với ý nghĩa tương tự bằng cách dùng 'used to', 'didn't use to' hoặc 'Did ... use to?')

- When I was a child, I watched cartoons on TV. I don't watch cartoons anymore.
I used to watch cartoons on TV , but I don't anymore.
- Did you go to a kindergarten when you were a child?
Did you use to go to a kindergarten ?
- When I was a child, I cried a lot. I don't cry a lot now.
I _____ , but I don't anymore.
- Now you live in this town. Where did you live before you came here?
Where _____ before you came here?
- When I was a child, I wanted to be an adult like my father.
I _____ like my father.
- When Carol was a child, she was very shy. Now she's not shy.
Carol _____ , but she isn't anymore.
- I didn't get up early when I was younger. Now I usually get up early.
I didn't _____ , but now I do.

8. When I was younger, I made a lot of **spelling mistakes**. Now I don't anymore.
I _____, but I don't anymore.
9. When Brian was younger, he didn't drink coffee. Now he drinks coffee.
Brian didn't _____, but now he does.
10. Did you like wearing new clothes when you were a child?
Did _____?

EXERCISE 4: Complete each sentence using 'used to' or 'didn't use to' with one verb in the box. Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng cách dùng 'used to' hoặc 'didn't use to' với một động từ trong khung. Hãy dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

ride	not stay up	take	have	not do
not be	like	not jog	be	work

1. Mr. and Mrs. Bell used to have a dog, but they don't have a dog now.
2. Mrs. Riley _____ her dog for a walk in the park, but she doesn't anymore.
3. Samantha _____ in a bank, but now she works in a drugstore.
4. My mother _____ aerobics at the gym, but now she does three times a week.
5. I _____ interested in chemistry, but now I am.
6. My father _____ in the morning, but now he jogs five kilometers a day.
7. Hoa's sister _____ an airhostess, but she isn't anymore.
8. My brother _____ very late at night, but now he does because he has to study for his final examination.
9. I _____ eating ice-cream a lot, but I don't anymore.
10. Mr. Baker _____ his bike to work, but now he drives a car.

EXERCISE 5: Complete each sentence with the right preposition using 'at', 'in' or 'on'. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với giới từ thích hợp, dùng 'at', 'in' hoặc 'on'.)

1. I'm going to a wedding _____ September 5th.
2. Susan and Tony met _____ the summer of 2006.
3. I woke up _____ midnight because the telephone suddenly rang.
4. Most of the offices are closed _____ the weekend.
5. Children often get presents from Santa Claus _____ Christmas.
6. They often go to a restaurant for dinner _____ Saturday night.
7. Do we have any national holiday _____ May?
8. My father will retire from work _____ 2015.
9. What do people in your country often do _____ New Year's Eve?
10. Goodbye for now and see you _____ lunchtime!

EXERCISE 6: Complete each sentence with the right preposition using 'before', 'after' or 'between'. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với giới từ thích hợp, dùng 'before', 'after' hoặc 'between'.)

- The traffic is always crowded between Monday and Friday.
- You must finish the report _____ Tuesday. Wednesday will be too late!
- The manager won't return to his office until Thursday, so you'll be able to meet him _____ Wednesday.
- The company was developed well _____ 1990 and 2000.
- People often clean and decorate their homes _____ New Year.
- I don't remember exactly the time, but I'm sure the accident happened _____ nine and eleven o'clock last night.
- See you again _____ lunchtime! Then, we'll have lunch together.
- Don't come back home _____ 10.00 p.m.! The gate is always locked at ten.
- The weather is ideal for camping _____ March and May.
- I usually get home from work at 6.00 p.m. Then, I have a shower and eat dinner. _____ dinner, I watch TV for about an hour before going to bed.

EXERCISE 7: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

- A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

- It is good to listen to fairy stories _____ cold winter nights.
A. at B. on C. in D. by
- My grandma _____ tell me fairy stories when I was a child.
A. use to B. used C. was used to D. used to
- What do you often do _____ the weekend?
A. in B. since C. on D. between
- I often have a rest _____ 12.30 and 1.00 after lunch.
A. before B. between C. after D. in
- _____ wear a tie to school when you were younger?
A. Did you used B. Did you used to
C. Did you use to D. Were you use to
- Where did he _____ before he moved here?
A. use to work B. used to work
C. use to working D. used working

7. I _____ the news of the earthquake while I was driving home.
A. hear B. heard C. have heard D. would hear
8. Where _____ when I phoned you last night?
A. did you be B. you did be
C. were you D. was you
9. The harvest time usually finishes _____ the winter comes.
A. on B. before C. between D. in
10. Nurses often have to work _____ night.
A. at B. in C. on D. since

EXERCISE 8: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. Grandma didn't used to go to school because her family was too poor.
A B C D
2. At that time, there didn't use to being any electricity in the village.
A B C D
3. The farmer was in his field and his water buffalo is grazing nearby.
A B C D
4. Everyone was exciting because the prince wanted to choose his wife from the village.
A B C D
5. The villagers used to hold the harvest festival at the fall.
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
excitement: sự sôi động; sự kích động	excite: gây kích động	excited: bị kích động; phấn khích exciting: gây phấn khích	excitingly: một cách phấn khích
fortune: vận may		fortunate: may mắn unfortunate: kém may mắn	fortunately: may mắn unfortunately: không may

magic: phép thuật magician: nhà ảo thuật		magical: có phép thuật; kì diệu	magically: một cách kì diệu
tradition: truyền thống		traditional: thuộc về truyền thống	traditionally: theo truyền thống
wisdom: sự khôn ngoan		wise: khôn ngoan unwise: thiếu khôn ngoan	wisely: một cách khôn ngoan

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: The pilot managed to land the plane safely. (safe)

- I don't think it is _____ to go sailing in this stormy weather. (wisdom)
- Her words had a _____ effect on him. (magic)
- He was very _____ about driving the first car of his own. (excite)
- I don't like people who are _____ to animals. (cruelty)
- '*Banh chung*' is a _____ Vietnamese cake which is often eaten at New Year. (tradition)
- The _____ sawed the girl into two halves. (magic)
- It was _____ for the campers that the rain stopped. (fortune)
- My heart was thumping with _____ when I heard the good news. (excite)
- Grandmothers _____ tell fairy stories to their grandchildren before bedtime. (tradition)
- The teacher wanted to say a few words of _____ to his students before the examination. (wise)
- I got stuck in the traffic, but _____ I arrived at the airport in time to catch the plane. (fortune)
- I want to help you, but _____ there's nothing I can do. (fortune)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each blank space in the passage with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi khoảng trống trong đoạn văn sau bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>quickly</i>	<i>powerful</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>pair</i>
<i>At last</i>	<i>only</i>	<i>never</i>	<i>happy</i>

The Happy Shoes

Many years ago there lived a king who was very rich and (1) powerful , but he always felt ill and unhappy. One day his doctor said to him, "There is (2) _____ one thing that will make you well and (3) _____. You must wear the shoes of a man who is (4) _____ unhappy."

The king asked hundreds of men if they were always happy. They all said they were sometimes happy and sometimes not. (5) _____ he asked a poor fisherman who said he was happy every day (6) _____ morning till night. "Give me your shoes (7) _____," the king said.

The fisherman laughed. "I am sorry," he said. "I've never had a (8) _____ of shoes in my life."

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Some of the words in the box are stressed on the first syllable; the others are stressed on the second syllable. Put the words in the right column. (Một số từ trong khung được đọc nhấn ở vần thứ nhất; số còn lại được nhấn ở vần thứ hai. Hãy đặt chúng vào cột thích hợp.)

<i>harvest</i>	<i>remember</i>	<i>modern</i>	<i>equipment</i>	<i>festival</i>
<i>buffalo</i>	<i>traditional</i>	<i>excited</i>	<i>immediately</i>	<i>magically</i>

Words stressed on the first syllable	Words stressed on the second syllable
modern	remember

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- A. tiger B. wisdom C. stripe D. decide
- A. nut B. but C. shut D. put
- A. farmer B. fall C. daughter D. straw
- A. black B. happy C. graze D. magic
- A. shoes B. choose C. lose D. poor

PROGRESS TEST 2

(Unit 3 and Unit 4)

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

1. My grandfather is 90 years old. He is too old to look after _____.
A. hisself B. myself C. yourself D. himself
2. "_____ did your Mom buy so much food?" "Because we're going to have some relatives coming to have dinner today."
A. When B. Why C. What D. Where
3. "I have trouble getting up early in the morning." "You _____ not to go to bed too late at night."
A. must B. ought C. should D. have
4. You don't _____ to cook dinner tonight. I can do it myself.
A. ought B. should C. be D. have
5. My father _____ smoke twenty cigarettes a day, but now he doesn't smoke any more.
A. ought to B. has to C. used to D. have to
6. "When do you have English lessons?" "I have English lessons _____ Tuesday morning and Friday afternoon."
A. on B. in C. at D. of
7. We usually have dinner _____ 6.00 p.m. and 7.0 p.m.
A. in B. for C. between D. on
8. When I was young, my grandmother used to _____ me fairy tales before my bedtime.
A. tell B. say C. talk D. speak

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. Twenty years ago, there was no electricity in the village, so the villagers _____ do everything by hand. (have to)
2. Mr. Nhan doesn't have a motorbike. He _____ everywhere by bicycle. (travel)
3. What _____ life like in Vietnam a hundred years ago? (be)
4. My mother is in the kitchen. She _____ dinner right now. (cook)

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. It is very _____ to let your children play with matches. (danger)
2. All _____ and drugs must be kept in locked cupboards. (chemistry)

3. All the villagers were very _____ about the harvest festival. (excite)
 4. Man has the _____ that animals do not have. (wise)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box. There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

<i>look</i>	<i>walk</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>basement</i>	<i>simple</i>
-------------	-------------	--------------	-----------------	---------------

Some houses have one room. Some houses have many rooms. There is usually a bedroom for sleeping. There is often a kitchen for cooking. There is usually a bathroom. There is often a living room for sitting and talking. Some houses have basements. The (1) _____ is under the main part of the house. Some houses have attics. The attic is above the main part of the house. Most houses have a door so people can enter and exit the house. Most houses have windows so the people can (2) _____ outside. Windows also let air into the house from outdoors.

Some houses are fancy. They are painted bright colors, and are very decorative. Some houses are not fancy – they are plain and (3) _____. Houses look very different in different parts of the world. But, people who live in a house probably all agree that there is no (4) _____ like home!

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

The Bear and the Travellers

Two travellers were on a long journey through the countryside. They were walking through a forest, when, some way ahead of them, they suddenly spotted a great bear walking towards them. They were not sure whether the bear had seen them, but not wanting to take any risks, the first traveller climbed up the first tree and hid amongst the high branches. The second one dropped his bags and fell to the ground, pretending to be dead. He had heard somewhere that bears don't like to eat dead flesh, so he thought this was his safest way to survive.

The bear reached the spot where the man was lying on the ground, who was keeping as still as he could, and doing his best to keep his breath in. The bear sniffed around his head for a few minutes, but did not seem to be all that interested, and went on his way. The second traveller carefully climbed down from the tree to join his friend. "Phew!" he said, "That was close. From up there in the tree, I knew that bear was talking to you!"

"He was," the second one replied. "He told me to be more careful in future when setting out on a journey, and not to travel with someone who deserts you at the first sign of trouble!"

1. The first traveller climbed up a tree when he saw the bear.
2. The second traveller ran away as the bear was coming toward him.
3. The man believed that bears dislike eating dead animals.
4. The bear spoke to the second man before going away.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. My bedroom has a small bed, a desk, a chair, and a bookshelf.

There is

2. My Dad will be home after dinner.

My Dad won't

3. Mr. Hung doesn't walk to work now.

Mr. Hung used

4. You must finish all of your homework before going to bed.

You have

Unit

5

STUDY HABITS

(Những thói quen học tập)

VOCABULARY

- behave [bi'heiv] (v) : cư xử

- behavior [bi'heivjər] (n) : cách cư xử

Ví dụ: After a while her behavior began to upset everyone.

(Sau một thời gian cách cư xử của cô ấy bắt đầu làm mọi người bức tức.)

- come across [kəm ə'kra:s] (v) : tình cờ gặp

Ví dụ: I came across this old photo while I was cleaning my room.

(Tôi tình cờ bắt gặp tấm ảnh cũ này trong khi đang dọn vệ sinh phòng.)

- conversation [ˌkɑ:nvər'seɪʃn] (n) : cuộc nói chuyện

Ví dụ: It is always easy for Lisa to get into a conversation with anyone.

(Lisa luôn thấy dễ dàng khi bắt đầu trò chuyện với bất cứ ai.)

- co-operate (with) [koʊ'ə:pəreɪt] (v) : hợp tác

- co-operation [koʊ'ə:pə'reɪʃn] (n) : sự hợp tác

Ví dụ: We hope to see closer co-operation between parents and the school.

(Chúng tôi hy vọng thấy được sự hợp tác chặt chẽ hơn giữa phụ huynh và nhà trường.)

- habit [ˈhæbɪt] (n) : thói quen
Ví dụ: He got into the habit of biting his nails when he was thinking.
(Anh ta có thói quen cắn móng tay khi anh ta đang suy nghĩ.)
- improve [ɪmˈpruːv] (v) : cải thiện; tiến bộ
Ví dụ: My sister is trying to improve her English to study abroad.
(Chị tôi đang cố gắng cải thiện môn tiếng Anh để đi học ở nước ngoài.)
- instead [ɪnˈsted] (adv) : thay vào đó
Ví dụ: There's no coffee. Would you like a cup of tea instead?
(Không còn cà-phê. Thay vào đó xin mời anh dùng một tách trà?)
- highlight [ˈhaɪlaɪt] (v) : làm nổi bật; đánh dấu
Ví dụ: He highlighted the spelling mistakes in red.
(Anh ấy đã đánh dấu những lỗi chính tả bằng mực đỏ.)
- highlighter [ˈhaɪlaɪtər] (n) : bút dạ quang
- learn by heart [ˈlɜːn baɪ haːrt] (v) : học thuộc lòng
- list [lɪst] (n) : danh sách
- meaning [ˈmiːnɪŋ] (n) : ý nghĩa
- mother tongue [ˈmʌðər ˌtʌŋ] (n) : tiếng mẹ đẻ
- participate (in) [pɑːrˈtɪsɪpət] (v) : tham gia
- participation [pɑːrˌtɪsɪˈpeɪʃn] (n) : sự tham gia
Ví dụ: My teacher congratulated me on my active participation in class discussions.
(Thầy giáo khen ngợi tôi về sự tham gia tích cực trong các cuộc thảo luận lớp.)
- practice [ˈpræktɪs] (v) : thực hành, luyện tập; (n) sự thực hành
Ví dụ: The band is practicing for their performance next Saturday.
(Ban nhạc đang luyện tập cho buổi trình diễn thứ bảy tới.)
- promise [ˈpruːmɪs] (v) : hứa; (n) lời hứa
Ví dụ: Tom promised to send me a postcard when he got there.
(Tom hứa gửi cho tôi một tấm bưu ảnh khi anh ta đến đó.)
- pronounce [prəˈnaʊns] (v) : phát âm
- pronunciation [prəˌnʌnsiˈeɪʃn] (n) : cách phát âm
Ví dụ: The students will be grateful if the teacher corrects their pronunciation.
(Các học sinh sẽ rất biết ơn nếu cô giáo sửa cách phát âm cho họ.)
- proud (of) [praʊd] (adj) : tự hào
- report card [rɪˈpɔːrt kɑːrd] (n) : phiếu điểm học sinh = school report
- revise [rɪˈvaɪz] (v) : ôn tập
- revision [rɪˈvɪʒn] (n) : việc ôn tập
Ví dụ: The students are very busy with their revision at the moment.
(Hiện thời các học sinh rất bận rộn với việc ôn tập.)

- semester [sɪ'mestər] (n) : học kì
- signature ['sɪgnətʃər] (n) : chữ ký
- Spain [speɪn] (n) : nước Tây Ban Nha
- Spanish ['spæniʃ] (n) : tiếng Tây Ban Nha
- stick [stɪk] - stuck - stuck [stʌk] (v): dán vào

Ví dụ: She stuck a stamp on the envelope.

(Cô ấy dán một con tem vào phong bì.)

- underline [ˌʌndər'laɪn] (v) : gạch dưới; gạch chân

GRAMMAR

1/ Adverbs of manner

2/ Modal: *should*

3/ Commands, requests and advice in reported speech

1/ Adverbs of manner

(Trạng từ tính cách)

I/ Hình thức:

- a/ **Adjective + 'ly'**: Trạng từ tính cách thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm 'ly' vào tính từ. Ví dụ: [Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online](https://bookgiaokhoa.com)

Adjective	Adverb of manner
Quick: nhanh	Quickly
Slow: chậm	Slowly
Bad: dở	Badly
Soft: mềm dịu	Softly
Quiet: im lặng	Quietly
Beautiful: đẹp	Beautifully

- b/ **Ngoại lệ**: Có một số trạng từ tính cách có hình thức đặc biệt, và không thêm 'ly'. Ví dụ:

Adjective	Adverb of manner
Good: giỏi	Well
Fast: nhanh	Fast
Hard: chăm chỉ	Hard

II/ Cách dùng: Chúng ta hãy so sánh cách dùng của tính từ và trạng từ tính cách:

a/ Tính từ:

* Chúng ta dùng tính từ trước một danh từ để mô tả cho danh từ đó. Ví dụ:

- This is a *beautiful* painting. (*Đây là một bức tranh đẹp.*)
- John is a *good* worker. (*John là một công nhân giỏi.*)
- Alice has a *soft* voice. (*Alice có giọng nói dịu dàng.*)

* Chúng ta cũng dùng tính từ sau động từ 'Be' và các động từ nối như: *look, seem, feel, taste, smell, sound, become, get, ...* để mô tả cho chủ ngữ. Ví dụ:

- This painting is *beautiful*. (*Bức tranh này đẹp.*)
- Her voice sounds *soft*. (*Giọng cô ấy nghe có vẻ dịu dàng.*)
- John feels *good* today. (*Hôm nay John cảm thấy tốt.*)

b/ Trạng từ tính cách:

* Chúng ta dùng trạng từ tính cách để mô tả cho động từ (hành động). Chúng ta có thể đặt trạng từ tính cách ở các vị trí sau:

1/ Ngay sau động từ:

- Alice speaks *softly*. (*Alice nói một cách dịu dàng.*)
- You paint *beautifully*. (*Bạn vẽ đẹp.*)
- John works *hard*. (*John làm việc chăm chỉ.*)

2/ Sau động từ + tân ngữ:

- Alice sings the song *softly*. (*Alice hát bản nhạc nhẹ nhàng.*)
- You paint landscapes *beautifully*. (*Bạn vẽ phong cảnh đẹp.*)
- John does his work *hard*.
(*John làm công việc của anh ấy một cách chăm chỉ.*)

3/ Ngay trước động từ chính:

- Alice *softly* sings the song. (*Alice hát bản nhạc nhẹ nhàng.*)
- He *quietly* did his work. (*Anh ấy im lặng làm công việc của mình.*)
- The customers *patiently* waited for the manager in the hall.
(*Các khách hàng kiên nhẫn chờ ông giám đốc trong tiền sảnh.*)

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng trạng từ tính cách trước quá khứ phân từ. Ví dụ:

- The driver was *badly* injured in the accident.
(*Người tài xế bị thương nặng trong vụ tai nạn.*)
- His speech was *well* prepared.
(*Bài phát biểu của ông ấy được chuẩn bị kỹ.*)

2/ Modal: *should*

I/ Hình thức: "should + nguyên mẫu không 'to'"

* **Câu khẳng định – Affirmative:**

I, You, He, She, It We, They	should	stay write leave
---------------------------------	--------	------------------------

* **Câu phủ định – Negative:**

I, You, He, She, It We, They	shouldn't should not	stay write leave
---------------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

* **Câu hỏi – Question:**

Should	I, you, he, she, it we, they	stay? write? leave?
--------	---------------------------------	---------------------------

II/ **Cách dùng:** Chúng ta thường dùng 'should' hoặc 'shouldn't' để cho ai lời khuyên, hoặc hỏi xin ai lời khuyên. Ví dụ:

- You should wash these clothes in warm water.

(Bạn nên giặt những quần áo này bằng nước ấm.)

- You shouldn't drink very strong coffee. It'll keep you awake all night.

(Bạn không nên uống cà-phê quá đậm. Nó sẽ làm bạn thức suốt đêm.)

- Should we wait for another few minutes or should we go home now?

(Chúng ta nên chờ thêm ít phút hay là chúng ta nên về nhà ngay?)

3/ Commands, requests and advice in reported speech

(Câu tường thuật với mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu và lời khuyên)

I/ **Reporting commands and requests:** Khi tường thuật lại mệnh lệnh hoặc lời yêu cầu, chúng ta có thể dùng động từ 'told' và 'asked' với cấu trúc sau:

a/ Subject + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{told} \\ \text{asked} \end{array} \right\}$ + object + to do something

(= bảo ai hoặc yêu cầu ai làm việc gì)

b/ Subject + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{told} \\ \text{asked} \end{array} \right\}$ + object + **not** to do something

(= bảo ai hoặc yêu cầu ai *đừng* làm việc gì)

Ví dụ:

Direct speech: Câu trực tiếp	Reported speech: Tường thuật
'Finish the report at once,' he said.	He told me to finish the report at once.
'Please, come back later,' she said.	She asked me to come back later.
'Don't wait for me,' he said.	He told me not to wait for him.
'Don't smoke, please,' she said.	She asked me not to smoke.

II/ Reporting advice: Khi tường thuật lại lời khuyên, chúng ta có thể dùng cấu trúc:

He said (that) } + subject + { should do something
 She said (that) } should not do something

CHÚ Ý: chúng ta phải thay đổi đại từ và một số chi tiết cho thích hợp khi tường thuật. Ví dụ:

Direct speech: Câu trực tiếp	Reported speech: Tường thuật
'You should wait here,' he said to me.	He said (that) I should wait there.
'You should not drink wine,' she said to me.	She said I should not drink wine.
'I should help you with this,' he said to me.	He said he should help me with that.
'I should not eat much meat,' she said to me.	She said she should not eat much meat.

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng cấu trúc: '**Subject + advised + object + (not) to do something**' khi tường thuật lời khuyên. Ví dụ:

Direct speech: Câu trực tiếp	Reported speech: Tường thuật
'You should wait here,' he said to me.	He advised me to wait there.
'You should not play computer games,' she said to me.	She advised me not to play computer games.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete each sentence using the right word in parentheses.
 (Hoàn thành mỗi câu dùng từ thích hợp trong ngoặc.)

Examples: Your English is good. (good / well)
 You speak English well. (good / well)

1. He often drives very _____. (dangerous / dangerously)
2. His driving is very _____. (dangerous / dangerously)
3. The music they played was _____. (soft / softly)
4. The band played music _____. (soft / softly)
5. The teacher spoke _____ this morning. (angry / angrily)
6. The teacher looked very _____ this morning. (angry / angrily)
7. This new pen writes very _____. (good / well)
8. This is a very _____ pen. (good / well)
9. She sang her song _____ at the party. (bad / badly)
10. The song she sang at the party was very _____. (bad / badly)

EXERCISE 2: Finish the sentence with the right verb and adverb so that it has the same meaning as the sentence printed before it. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với động từ và trạng từ thích hợp để nó có ý nghĩa giống với câu cho trước nó.)

Example: Mr. Lang is a very good worker.

Mr. Lang usually works very well.

1. Wendy is a careful writer.
Wendy always _____.
2. Mrs. Simpson is a very **slow** walker.
Mrs. Simpson usually _____.
3. I was a very bad **dancer** years ago.
I used to _____.
4. The children's games are **nice** today.
The children are playing _____.
5. The music the band played was very noisy.
The band _____.
6. Janet told me the news. Her voice was happy.
Janet _____ the news.
7. The woman waited for the **manager**. Her **manner** was **patient**.
The woman _____ for the manager.
8. Miss Thanh is a very good teacher of English.
Miss Thanh teaches _____.

EXERCISE 3: Your friend Dan has some problems. Give him advice using 'should' or 'shouldn't' with the information in parentheses. (Bạn của em là Dân đang gặp một vài vấn đề. Em hãy khuyên bạn và dùng 'should' hoặc 'shouldn't' với thông tin cho trong ngoặc.)

1. Dan: I don't feel well these days.
(see the doctor)
You: *You should see the doctor.*
2. Dan: I often have toothache.
(not eat / so many candies)
You:
3. Dan: Mai is angry with me because she doesn't understand me.
(speak to her about it)
You:
4. Dan: The examination is coming and I'm very worried.
(not worry so much)
You:
5. Dan: I'm very sorry. I was rude to the teacher yesterday.
(ask her to forgive you)
You:
6. Dan: My eyes are often very tired.
(not watch TV for long hours)
You:
7. Dan: I often feel very bored.
(take up some interests like gardening or reading)
You:
8. Dan: My stomach always feels full.
(eat more vegetables and fruit)
You:

EXERCISE 4: Rewrite each sentence in reported speech using 'asked / told + object + (not) to-infinitive'. (Hãy viết lại mỗi câu với dạng tường thuật và dùng 'asked / told + object + (not) to-infinitive'.)

1. 'Please, give Nam my message,' Paul said to me.
Paul asked me to give Nam his message.
2. 'Don't ask me about it!' Lan said to me.
Lan told me not to ask her about it.
3. 'Please, keep silent during the meeting!' Jane said to everybody.
Jane asked
4. 'Can you put the litter in the trash can?' She said to me.
She asked
5. 'Write your composition on a sheet of paper,' the teacher told us.
The teacher told

6. 'Please, don't smoke on the bus!' The **conductor** said to everybody.

The conductor asked

7. 'Don't use my computer again!' Tom told his brother.

Tom told

8. 'Can you **turn down** the music, please?' Sheila said to her sister.

Sheila asked

9. 'Don't **dye** your hair!' Mr. Tam said to his daughter.

Mr. Tam told

10. 'Stay away from bad friends!' Mr. Hai said to his son.

Mr. Hai told

EXERCISE 5: Your friend Lam gave you some advice. Rewrite his advice in reported speech. First, use 'should' or 'should not', and then use 'advised + object + (not) to-infinitive'. (Bạn của em là Lâm đã cho em một số lời khuyên. Hãy lời khuyên của bạn với dạng tường thuật. Đầu tiên hãy dùng 'should' hoặc 'should not', và sau đó dùng 'advised + object + (not) to-infinitive'.)

Example: 'You should practice English more often,' Lam said to me.

Lam said *I should practice English more often.*

Lam advised *me to practice English more often.*

1. 'You should do morning exercise **regularly**,' Lam said.

Lam said

Lam advised

2. 'You should not **waste so much time chatting** on the Net,' Lam said.

Lam said

Lam advised

3. 'You should join an English speaking club,' Lam said.

Lam said

Lam advised

4. 'You should help your mother with **domestic chores**,' Lam said.

Lam said

Lam advised

5. 'You should not read too many comic books,' Lam said.

Lam said

Lam advised

6. 'You should be more **active** in class **discussions**,' Lam said.

Lam said

Lam advised

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. My plane leaves at 6.00 tomorrow morning, so I _____ to bed early tonight.
A. should go B. should to go
C. should not go D. shouldn't to go
2. The boss told Jenny _____ late for work again.
A. not be B. to not be C. not being D. not to be
3. Please carry the glasses _____. They're very expensive!
A. careful B. carefully C. care D. caring
4. Jimmy works very _____, but he never gets good marks.
A. good B. bad C. hard D. hardly
5. She speaks English very _____, so I can hardly understand her.
A. quick B. slow C. fastly D. fast
6. Jenny phoned me last night. Her voice sounded very _____.
A. sad B. sadly C. unhappily D. loudly
7. This neighborhood is very dangerous, so I advise you _____ at night.
A. don't go out B. not to go out
C. to not go out D. not going out
8. Dick always gives you wrong advice. You _____ to him.
A. should listen B. should not listen
C. must listen D. have to listen
9. What did the teacher _____ you to do this morning?
A. say B. talk C. speak D. tell
10. I told _____ so much noise. Why didn't you listen to me?
A. you not make B. you not to make
C. you don't make D. that you not to make

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. He angry told me not to make the same mistake again.
A B C D

2. Jenny asked her mother sending her some money at once.
A B C D
3. When you are with me, you should never to mention it again.
A B C D
4. Please, to pay more attention to what I say!
A B C D
5. She never felt so loneliness before.
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
absence: sự vắng mặt		absent: vắng mặt	
behavior: cách cư xử	behave: cư xử		
co-operation: sự cộng tác	co-operate: cộng tác; hợp tác		
improvement: sự cải thiện	improve: cải thiện; tiến bộ		
participation: sự tham dự participant: người tham dự	participate (in): tham dự		
pride: niềm kiêu hãnh		proud: hãnh diện; tự hào	proudly: một cách tự hào
revision: việc ôn tập	revise: ôn tập		
signature: chữ kí	sign: kí tên		

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: The pilot managed to land the plane safely. (safe)

- Lan was praised for her good _____ in class. (behave)
- She _____ showed her parents her report card. (proud)
- I'm doing a lot of _____ for tomorrow's history examination. (revise)

4. The teacher praised him for his active _____ in every class discussion. (participate)
5. Do you understand the English saying: '_____ makes the heart grow fonder'? (absent)
6. His _____ was hurt when he lost the game. (proud)
7. This document needs the _____ of yours and your wife. (sign)
8. Unfortunately, there was no _____ in his work at school. (improve)
9. The purpose of the meeting is to improve the _____ between parents and the school. (co-operate)
10. Nam has been always an active _____ in class discussions. (participate)
11. Success in sports is a source of national _____. (proud)
12. He didn't give the reason for his _____ from work. (absent)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

Instead (adv): thay vào đó
 mother tongue (n): tiếng mẹ đẻ
 come across (v): tình cờ gặp
 necessary (adj): cần thiết
 In order to: để mà
 pronunciation (n): cách đọc
 proud of (adj): tự hào về
 report card (n): phiếu điểm học sinh

1. _____ improve my English, I have to read more and learn more new words.
2. She didn't read the letter. _____, she tore it to pieces.
3. Learning new words is _____. You cannot study a foreign language without doing it!
4. Tom did well at school, and his parents said they were very _____ him.
5. Can you show me the _____ of this word? It's difficult!
6. Australians speak English as their _____.
7. Your _____ shows that you have been doing well this semester.
8. Some people highlight all new words they _____ when they read.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Which of the following words in each question is stressed on the first syllable? (Từ nào trong mỗi câu hỏi sau đây được đọc nhấn ở vần thứ nhất?)

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. Spanish | B. improve | C. report | D. believe |
| 2. A. semester | B. about | C. promise | D. Biology |
| 3. A. however | B. remember | C. across | D. habit |
| 4. A. revise | B. necessary | C. example | D. behavior |
| 5. A. conduct | B. signature | C. Geography | D. important |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kʌm]

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. r <u>ev</u> ise | B. s <u>ign</u> ature | C. <u>und</u> erline | D. <u>high</u> light |
| 2. A. <u>to</u> ngue | B. <u>n</u> one | C. <u>w</u> ord | D. <u>do</u> ne |
| 3. A. <u>h</u> ear <u>t</u> | B. <u>l</u> earn | C. <u>h</u> ear <u>d</u> | D. <u>f</u> irst |
| 4. A. <u>m</u> ove | B. <u>im</u> prove | C. <u>l</u> ose | D. <u>lo</u> ve |
| 5. A. r <u>ep</u> ort | B. <u>s</u> upport | C. <u>sh</u> ort | D. <u>p</u> ost |

downloadsachmienphi.com

Unit

6

THE YOUNG PIONEERS CLUB
(Đội thiếu niên tiên phong)

VOCABULARY

- act [ækt] (v) : đóng kịch; đóng phim
 Ví dụ: I was chosen to act the part of Romeo in the play of the class.
 (Tôi được chọn đóng vai Romeo trong vở kịch của lớp.)
- acting ['æktɪŋ] (n) : việc đóng kịch hoặc đóng phim
- aim [eɪm] (n) : mục đích
- application [ˌæplɪ'keɪʃn] (n) : sự xin việc hoặc xin học
- apply (for) [ə'plai] (v) : xin việc; xin học
- association [ə,sousi'eɪʃn] (n) : đoàn thể; hiệp hội

Ví dụ: The British Medical Association is asking for a complete ban on tobacco advertising.

(Hiệp hội Y tế Anh quốc đang yêu cầu cấm hoàn toàn việc quảng cáo thuốc lá.)

- Atlantic [ə'tlæntɪk] (n) : Đại Tây Dương
- citizen ['sɪtɪzn] (n) : công dân
- citizenship ['sɪtɪznʃɪp] (n) : quyền công dân

Ví dụ: You can apply for citizenship after you have lived in the country for five years.

(Bạn có thể nộp đơn xin quyền công dân sau khi đã sống trong nước được năm năm.)

- co-education [ˌkəʊedʒu'keɪʃn] (n) : việc giáo dục cả nam lẫn nữ
- co-educational [ˌkəʊedʒu'keɪʃnəl] (adj): (trường học) chung cả nam lẫn nữ
- collect [kə'lekt] (v) : thu gom
- differ (from) ['dɪfər] (v) : khác với

Ví dụ: His opinion differs from those of his friends.

(Ý kiến của anh ấy khác với ý kiến của các bạn.)

- draw [drɔ:] – drew [dru:] – drawn [drɔ:n] (v): vẽ
- encourage [ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ] (v): khuyến khích; động viên

Ví dụ: The teacher encourages her students to talk freely about their opinions.

(Cô giáo khuyến khích các học sinh nói một cách thoải mái về ý kiến của họ.)

- enroll [ɪn'roʊl] (v) : đăng kí; ghi danh

Ví dụ: Would you like to enroll in an English course at the ABC Center?

(Bạn có muốn ghi danh một khóa tiếng Anh tại trung tâm ABC không?)

- environment [ɪn'vaɪrənmənt] (n) : môi trường
- environmental [ɪn,vaɪrən'mentl] (adj): thuộc về môi trường

Ví dụ: These organizations care deeply about environmental issues.

(Những tổ chức này quan tâm sâu sắc đến những vấn đề môi trường.)

- establish [ɪ'stæblɪʃ] (v) : thành lập

Ví dụ: My grandfather established the company when he was twenty.

(Ông tôi đã thành lập công ty này khi ông hai mươi tuổi.)

- fill out ['fɪl aʊt] (v) : điền vào (đơn xin)
- fit [fɪt] (adj) : khỏe mạnh
- fitness ['fɪtnəs] (n) : sự khỏe mạnh

Ví dụ: I'm trying to improve my fitness by walking for an hour every day.

(Tôi đang cố gắng cải thiện sức khỏe bằng cách đi bộ một tiếng mỗi ngày.)

- fund [fʌnd] (n) : quỹ tiền
- handicapped ['hændɪkæpt] (adj) : bị tàn tật

- lead (to) [li:d] – led – led [led] (v): dẫn đến
- mainly ['meɪnli] (adv) : chủ yếu

Ví dụ: Air is composed mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.
(Không khí chủ yếu gồm có khí ni-tơ và khí ôxi.)

- notice ['nəʊtɪs] (n) : thông báo
- organize ['ɔ:rgənaɪz] (v) : tổ chức
- organization [ɔ:rgənaɪ'zeɪʃn] (n): một tổ chức

Ví dụ: Her husband works for a large international organization.
(Chồng cô ấy làm việc cho một tổ chức quốc tế lớn.)

- outdoor ['aʊtɔ:ɹ] (adj) : ở ngoài trời
- outdoors ['aʊtɔ:ɹz] (adv) : ở ngoài trời

Ví dụ: It is impossible to work outdoors in such heat.
(Không thể nào làm việc ngoài trời trong cái nóng như thế này.)

- personal ['pɜ:rsənl] (adj) : thuộc về cá nhân; riêng tư
- Ví dụ: My personal opinion is that the students should be doing more work outside the classroom.

(Ý kiến cá nhân của tôi là học sinh nên làm việc ngoài lớp học nhiều hơn.)

- recycle [ˌri:'saɪkl] (v) : tái chế

Ví dụ: We are trying to recycle as much paper as possible.

(Chúng ta đang cố gắng tái chế càng nhiều giấy càng tốt.)

- register ['redʒɪstə] (v) : đăng kí
- resource [ˈrɪ'sɔ:rs] (n) : tài nguyên
- raise [reɪz] (v) : quyên góp (tiền)
- scout [skaʊt] (n) : hướng đạo sinh
- similar (to) ['sɪmələ] (adj) : giống với

Ví dụ: My answer was similar to those of my classmates.

(Câu trả lời của tôi cũng giống với của các bạn cùng lớp.)

- slightly ['slɑ:tlɪ] (adv) : hơi hơi; nhẹ nhẹ
- tidy [ˈtaɪdi] (adj) : gọn gàng; (v) làm gọn gàng
- voluntary ['vɔ:lɒntəri] (adj) : có tính cách tình nguyện
- volunteer [ˌvɔ:lɒn'tɪr] (n) : người tình nguyện; (v) tình nguyện

Ví dụ: Many students have volunteered to help street children.

(Nhiều sinh viên đã tình nguyện giúp đỡ các trẻ em đường phố.)

- worldwide ['wɜ:rlɔ:waɪd] (adj) & (adv): trên khắp thế giới
- youth [ju:θ] (n) : thanh niên

GRAMMAR

1/ Present simple with future meaning

2/ Gerunds

3/ Modals: *may, can, could*

1/ Present simple with future meaning

(Thì hiện tại đơn với ý nghĩa tương lai)

Ngoài cách dùng thì hiện tại đơn để diễn tả thói quen hàng ngày, chúng ta cũng có thể dùng thì hiện tại đơn để nói về một hành động trong tương lai khi hành động đó nằm trong một chương trình đã được sắp xếp, trong một thời gian biểu, hoặc trong một lịch trình của tàu, xe, máy bay, v... v... Ví dụ:

- 'What is the program of the party next Sunday?' 'Well, the guests arrive between 5.00 and 5.30 p.m. Then, we start the party.'

(*Chương trình của buổi tiệc vui Chủ nhật tới thế nào? 'Khách mời sẽ đến khoảng giữa 5.00 và 5.30 chiều. Sau đó chúng ta sẽ bắt đầu buổi tiệc vui.'*)

- The plane takes off at 10.30, so we must be at the airport before 10 o'clock.

(Máy bay cất cánh lúc 10.30, thế nên chúng ta phải có mặt tại phi trường trước 10 giờ.)

- This is the itinerary of our trip. We arrive in Nha Trang on Saturday and stay there for three nights. After that, we leave for Hue and stay there for two days.

(*Đây là lộ trình chuyến đi của chúng ta. Chúng ta sẽ đến Nha Trang vào thứ bảy và ở lại đó ba đêm. Sau đó chúng ta đi Huế và sẽ ở lại đó hai ngày.*)

2/ Gerunds

(Danh động từ)

* **Gerund**: là hình thức động từ thêm '-ing', và được dùng như một danh từ; có nghĩa là chúng ta có thể dùng 'gerund' làm chủ ngữ, tân ngữ hoặc dùng sau các giới từ. Ví dụ:

- Collecting stamps is a popular hobby. ('Collecting' = chủ ngữ)

(*Sưu tập tem thư là một thú tiêu khiển phổ biến.*)

- My sister likes cooking. ('cooking' = tân ngữ)

(*Chị tôi thích nấu ăn.*)

- I am interested in listening to fairy tales. ('listening' = sau giới từ)
(Tôi thích nghe truyện cổ tích.)

* Chúng ta có thể dùng 'gerund' làm tân ngữ sau một số động từ. Trong phạm vi bài học này, chúng ta chỉ chú ý cách dùng 'gerund' sau các động từ: **like, love, enjoy, hate, dislike, start, begin**. Ví dụ:

- I like playing soccer. (Tôi thích chơi bóng đá.)
- We love taking a walk in fine weather.
(Chúng tôi thích đi dạo khi thời tiết tốt.)
- Miss Nga enjoys teaching English at this school.
(Cô Nga thích dạy tiếng Anh ở trường này.)
- I hate waiting for the bus. (Tôi ghét chờ đợi xe buýt.)
- Anne dislikes doing household chores.
(Anne không thích làm việc nhà.)
- Hung started practicing Karate two years ago.
(Hùng bắt đầu tập Karate cách đây hai năm.)
- When did you begin learning English?
(Bạn bắt đầu học tiếng Anh khi nào?)

CHÚ Ý: Ngoại trừ động từ 'enjoy' và 'dislike', tất cả các động từ trên cũng có thể được dùng với 'to-infinitive'. Ví dụ:

- Hung started to practice Karate two years ago.
- When did you begin to learn English?

3/ Modals: **may, can, could**

(Động từ khiếm khuyết: **may, can, could**)

1/ '**May**': Chúng ta dùng 'may + bare infinitive' để hỏi xin phép hoặc cho phép ai làm gì. Ví dụ:

- 'May I go out, Miss?' 'Yes, you may.'
(Thưa cô cho phép em ra ngoài?' 'Được.'))
- 'May I ask you a question, Sir?' 'Yes, I'm listening.'
(Thưa ông cho phép tôi hỏi một câu được không?' 'Vâng, tôi đang lắng nghe đây.')
- You may play in the garden, but you may not get out of the gate.
(Con có thể chơi trong vườn, nhưng con không được phép ra ngoài cổng.)

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta cũng dùng 'may + bare infinitive' để dự đoán điều gì có thể xảy ra. Ví dụ:

- 'Why is Tam absent today?' 'He may be sick, but I'm not sure.'

(*Tại sao Tâm vắng mặt hôm nay?* 'Anh ấy có thể bị bệnh, nhưng tôi không biết chắc.')

2/ 'Can / Could': Chúng ta có thể dùng 'Can / Could + subject + bare infinitive' trong câu hỏi để lịch sự yêu cầu ai làm việc gì. Ví dụ:

- Can/Could you wait for me a minute, please?

(*Xin ông vui lòng chờ tôi một phút?*)

- Can/Could you help me carry this bag?

(*Anh giúp tôi xách cái túi này được không ạ?*)

Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng 'Can / Could' trong câu hỏi để lịch sự xin phép làm điều gì. Ví dụ:

- Can I help you, Madam?

(*Cho phép tôi giúp Bà được không ạ?*)

- Could I use your phone, please?

(*Cho phép tôi dùng điện thoại của ông được không ạ?*)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Lan is a tourist guide. She is speaking to her customers about the itinerary of the trip. Complete the sentences using the right form of the present simple of the following verbs. (Lan là một hướng dẫn viên du lịch. Cô ấy đang nói chuyện với khách hàng về lộ trình của chuyến đi. Hãy hoàn thành câu bằng cách dùng hình thức thích hợp của thì hiện tại đơn với các động từ sau.)

check

arrive

start

stop

leave

meet

take

get

reach

have

- The trip starts on Friday morning.
- Everybody _____ on the **coach** by six o'clock a.m.
- The coach _____ at a **roadside restaurant** at 7.30.
- We _____ breakfast and **get on** the coach again after 30 minutes.
- We _____ in Phan Rang at about 11.30 and have lunch there.
- The coach _____ for Nha Trang at 12.00.
- We _____ Nha Trang at about 2.00 p.m.
- Everybody _____ in at the hotel then.
- You _____ a short **rest** after checking in.
- We _____ again for dinner at 6 p.m. And ...

EXERCISE 2: Complete the sentences using the gerund of the following verbs.

Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành câu bằng cách dùng hình thức 'gerund' của các động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>wait</i>	<i>find</i>	<i>run</i>	<i>listen</i>	<i>disturb</i>
<i>knock</i>	<i>work</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>be</i>	<i>quarrel</i>

1. Do you like listening to the news on the radio?
2. I dislike _____ with people who are lazy.
3. I enjoy _____ a member of the school's football team.
4. I hate _____ people when they are busy.
5. I love _____ in the garden when it is fine.
6. We started _____ along the streets when it suddenly rained.
7. They continued _____ until after **midnight**.
8. I got tired of _____, so I left.
9. You must never come in this room without _____ first.
10. Did your sister succeed in _____ a good job?

EXERCISE 3: Complete each blank in the passage with the gerund of one of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi khoảng trống trong đoạn văn bằng hình thức 'gerund' của một trong các động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>have</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>fish</i>	<i>catch</i>
<i>catch</i>	<i>fish</i>	<i>sit</i>	

(1) Fishing is my favorite sport. I often fish for hours **without** (2) _____ anything. But this does not **worry** me. Some **fishermen** are **unlucky**. **Instead of** (3) _____ fish, they catch old **boots** and **rubbish**. I am even less lucky. I never catch anything – not even old boots. After (4) _____ spent **whole** mornings on the river, I always go home with an **empty** bag. 'You must **give up** fishing!' my friends say. 'It's a waste of time.' But they don't **realize** one important thing. I'm not really interested in (5) _____. I am only interested in (6) _____ in a **boat** and (7) _____ nothing at all!

EXERCISE 4: Read the situations and make questions with 'May', 'Can' or 'Could' as directed. (Hãy đọc tình huống rồi đặt câu hỏi với 'May', 'Can' hoặc 'Could' như được hướng dẫn.)

Example: You want to go out of the class for a moment. You say to the teacher:

May I go out for a moment, Miss ?

1. You want to have another piece of cake. You say to your Mom:
May I ?
2. You are at your friend's house, and you want to use his telephone. You say to him:
Can I ?
3. *You do not understand well what the teacher has just explained, so you ask her to do it again.* You say:
Could you ?
4. You are studying but your brother is turning up the television. You say to him:
Can you ?
5. You don't know if you can use your dictionary to do the test. You ask your teacher:
May I ?
6. You are lost and you want to ask the way to the nearest bus station. You ask a policeman:
Could you ?
7. You are at the library and you want to borrow a book home. You ask the librarian:
May I ?
8. You do not know how to use the new camera. You ask your father:
Could you ?
9. Your teacher asks you to do an exercise, but you want to do it later. You ask her:
May I ?
10. You forgot to bring your pen, so ask your friend to lend you her pen. You say:
Can you ?

EXERCISE 5: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. After _____ at her watch, she hurried to the office.
A. look B. to look C. looking D. she look
2. _____ the piano is something Jane always enjoys.
A. Practice B. Practicing C. To practicing D. She practicing

3. I started to feel afraid of _____ out alone at night.
A. going B. to go C. go D. went
4. I _____ being away from my family.
A. dislike B. want C. would like D. refuse
5. Some students hate _____ homework.
A. do B. doing C. they doing D. to doing
6. My brother enjoys _____ in the country.
A. to live B. live C. lives D. living
7. Can _____ you after class, Mai?
A. see B. I to see C. I see D. I seeing
8. _____ you open the door for me, please?
A. Must B. Should C. Could D. May
9. According to the program, the concert _____ at 5.30 tomorrow evening.
A. start B. starts C. would start D. started
10. Tina is thinking _____ business in this country.
A. to do B. she doing C. she does D. of doing

EXERCISE 6: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: lucky enough

1. If you are interested in camp, you can join us this weekend.
A B C D
2. We may go to the beach this Sunday or we could stay home; I'm not sure.
A B C D
3. Should you please show me how to use this photocopy machine?
A B C D
4. I dislike to leave so early, but I'm afraid I have to.
A B C D
5. According to the itinerary, the ship arrives in Hai Phong on Saturday
A B C
and leaving on Monday.
D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
- action: một hành động - activity: một hoạt động - actor / actress: nam / nữ diễn viên	act: hành động; diễn xuất	active: hiếu động; năng nổ	actively: hoạt bát
- application: đơn xin - applicant: người làm đơn xin	apply (for): làm đơn xin (việc, vào học, ...)		
difference: sự khác nhau	differ (from): khác với	different (from): khác với	differently: khác nhau
education: sự giáo dục	educate: giáo dục; dạy dỗ	educational: thuộc về giáo dục coeducational: thuộc về trường cho cả nam lẫn nữ	
enrollment: sự ghi danh; sự đăng kí	enroll: ghi danh; đăng kí		
nature: thiên nhiên		natural: thuộc về thiên nhiên	naturally: tự nhiên
organization: một tổ chức	organize: tổ chức	- organized: có tổ chức - unorganized: vô tổ chức	
similarity: sự giống nhau		similar (to): giống nhau	similarly: giống nhau

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

- Good _____ can help people get rid of poverty. (educate)
- Are there any youth _____ in your country? (organize)
- These plants can grow _____ in poor soils. (nature)
- The teacher asked the students to choose a partner for the next _____. (act)
- 'When is the _____ in this school?' 'It's the first week of August.' (enroll)
- 'Who is your favorite _____, Lan?' 'I think it's Tom Hank.' (act)

7. If you want to be a member of the club, please fill out this _____ form.
(apply)
8. Are the scouting programs _____ from one another in each country? (differ)
9. There is some _____ in the way the two groups work. (similar)
10. Are there both single-sex and _____ schools in your country? (educate)
11. The festival was well- _____ ; everybody was pleased with it. (organize)
12. Boys and girls may act _____ in this situation. (differ)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

blind (to sth) (adj)	: mù quáng đối với
encourage (v)	: khuyến khích; động viên
enroll (v)	: ghi danh; đăng kí
fitness (n)	: phong độ; sự khỏe mạnh
handicapped (adj)	: tàn tật
lead to (v)	: dẫn đến
outdoor (adj)	: ngoài trời
similar to (adj)	: giống với

1. Eating too much can _____ some health problems.
2. This school is open to all physically _____ children.
3. Do you want to _____ in this computer course?
4. Her teaching style is _____ that of most other teachers.
5. All these _____ activities have made the children very healthy.
6. Rooney is now back to _____ after a series of injuries.
7. Her love for her son made her _____ his faults.
8. Parents should _____ independence in their children.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Which of the following words in each question is stressed on the second syllable? (Từ nào trong mỗi câu hỏi sau đây được đọc nhấn ở vần thứ hai?)

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. number | B. enroll | C. hobby | D. favor |
| 2. A. animal | B. certainly | C. interest | D. assistance |
| 3. A. responding | B. handicapped | C. businessman | D. similar |
| 4. A. voluntary | B. popular | C. encourage | D. national |
| 5. A. vegetables | B. Atlantic | C. character | D. personal |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. tidy | B. ready | C. apply | D. healthy |
| 2. A. scout <u>i</u> ng | B. <u>y</u> outh | C. <u>p</u> roud | D. <u>l</u> oudly |
| 3. A. <u>ch</u> aracter | B. <u>ch</u> ildren | C. <u>ch</u> ance | D. <u>ch</u> urch |
| 4. A. <u>r</u> esource | B. <u>c</u> ourse | C. <u>c</u> ause | D. <u>h</u> our |
| 5. A. <u>bl</u> ind | B. <u>f</u> ind | C. <u>w</u> indy | D. <u>m</u> ind |

PROGRESS TEST 3

(Unit 5 and Unit 6)

downloadsachmienphi.com

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

- Tom is unhappy because he did _____ in the last test.
A. bad B. badly C. good D. well
- The children behaved very _____ in class today.
A. well B. good C. bad D. nice
- Miss Mai asked her students _____ all the exercises in Unit 5.
A. finish B. finishing C. finished D. to finish
- Some people learn new words _____ heart, while others do not.
A. in B. for C. at D. by
- I like coffee, especially white coffee, but I dislike _____ it.
A. make B. to make C. making D. to making
- I don't like cleaning, and I don't like washing up, _____.
A. too B. either C. neither D. same
- "_____ I borrow your paper a moment?" "Certainly."
A. Shall B. Will C. Can D. Would
- You must fill _____ this application form if you want to enroll for the activities.
A. out B. with C. for D. by

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. Scouting _____ in England in 1907. (begin)
2. I like these summer activities. I _____ for them now. (enroll)
3. The weather is very nice today. What about _____ for walk in the park? (go)
4. Miss Linh asked me _____ her after class. (meet)

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. He got bad marks in the test because he did no _____ at all. (revise)
2. The _____ of English words cause a lot of difficulties for the learners. (pronounce)
3. The Boy Scouts is a youth _____ that builds character and encourages good citizenship and personal fitness. (organize)
4. You must send your _____ before Friday or it'll be too late. (apply)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box. There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

<i>customer</i>	<i>watch</i>	<i>librarian</i>	<i>checks</i>	<i>lives</i>
-----------------	--------------	------------------	---------------	--------------

Today, Mike and his mom are going to the library. Mike wants to find a book to read. His mom wants to use a computer there.

When they get to the library, Mike finds a book about detectives. He also finds a book with chapters about a friendly ghost. Finally, he finds a book about a man who (1) _____ in the woods without food or water. He puts the books on the front desk and waits for his mom.

Mike's mom sits at one of the computers in the library. She (2) _____ her email and looks at pictures of flowers on the internet. Then she reads a news article on a website.

Mike's mom leaves the computer and walks over to Mike. "I got a movie for us to (3) _____ tonight," she says. "Are you ready to leave?"

"Sure," Mike says. He puts his books and the movie on the front desk to check out. "How long can we keep them?" he asks.

"Three weeks," says the (4) _____.

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

Cheerleaders

When you go to a college or high school sports event, you see cheerleaders. Cheerleaders are men and women. They dress in the colors of their team. They jump and dance in front of the crowd and shout the name of their team. Their job is to excite the crowd. Everybody makes a lot of noise. They want their team to win the game.

The first cheerleader was a man. In 1898, Johnny Campbell jumped in front of the crowd at the University of Minnesota and shouted for his team. He shouted, "Hoo-rah Minn-e-so-tah!" This was the first organized shout, or "yell". For the next thirty-two years cheerleaders were men only. Women were not cheerleaders until 1930.

Today cheerleaders work in teams. They practice special shouts, dances, and athletic shows. Often the women work separately from the men. But cheerleaders are most exciting when men and women work together. The men throw the women high in the air and catch them. The team members climb on each other's shoulders to make a human pyramid. They yell and dance too. It is like human fireworks.

1. Cheerleaders excite the crowd by jumpng, dancing, and shouting for their team.
2. By 1930, cheerleaders were both men and women.
3. Cheerleaders practice special shows like the women throwing the men high in the air and catching them.
4. A human pyramid is the way in which the team members climb on each other's shoulders.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. Their living room doesn't have any bookshelves.
There
2. Please, allow me to ask you a question, Mr. Thanh!
May ?
3. Mr. Johnson is a careful driver.
Mr. Johnson always
4. "Can you put the books on the desk?" Susan said to me.
Susan asked me

Unit

7

MY NEIGHBORHOOD

(Khu phố của tôi)

VOCABULARY

- airmail [ˈermeɪl] (n) : thư gửi bằng đường hàng không
- comfort [ˈkʌmfɜrt] (n) : tiện nghi

Ví dụ: He is trying to work hard to keep his family in comfort.

(Ông ấy cố gắng làm việc vất vả để giữ cho gia đình sống đầy đủ tiện nghi.)

- concerned (about) [kənˈsɜ:md] (adj) : lo lắng

Ví dụ: Many parents are concerned about the quality of education in primary schools.

(Nhiều phụ huynh lo lắng về chất lượng giáo dục trong các trường tiểu học.)

- convenience [kənˈvi:niəns] (n) : sự tiện lợi
- convenient [kənˈvi:niənt] (adj) : tiện lợi

Ví dụ: It is very convenient to do the shopping in the shopping mall.

(Đi mua hàng trong trung tâm mua sắm có mái che thì rất tiện lợi.)

- delicious [dɪˈlɪʃəs] (adj) : ngon miệng
- discount [ˈdiskaʊnt] (n) : sự giảm giá; (v)

Ví dụ: There is a 25% discount on all electrical goods until the end of July.

(Có giảm giá 25% trên tất cả các mặt hàng điện cho tới cuối tháng bảy.)

- discount [disˈkaʊnt or ˈdiskaʊnt] (v): giảm giá
- especially [ɪˈspeʃəli] (adv) : nhất là; đặc biệt là

Ví dụ: This shopping mall attracts a lot of shoppers, especially young women.

(Trung tâm mua sắm này thu hút nhiều người mua, nhất là các thiếu nữ.)

- grocery store [ˈɡroʊsəri stɔ:r] (n) : tiệm tạp hóa
- humid [ˈhju:mɪd] (adj) : ẩm ướt
- notice [ˈnoʊtɪs] (v) : chú ý

Ví dụ: Susan was so busy typing letters that she didn't notice me come in.

(Susan đang bận rộn đánh máy thư đến nỗi cô ấy không nhận thấy tôi đi vào.)

- own [oʊn] (v) : sở hữu
- owner [ˈoʊnər] (n) : chủ nhân

Ví dụ: The police are looking for the owner of the car that caused the accident this morning.

(Cảnh sát đang tìm kiếm chủ nhân của chiếc xe đã gây tai nạn sáng hôm nay.)

- pancake [ˈpæŋkeɪk] (n) : bánh chiên làm bằng bột, trứng và sữa
- parcel [ˈpa:rsəl] (n) : bưu kiện

- product [ˈprɑːdʌkt] (n) : sản phẩm

Ví dụ: Some of their products contain harmful chemicals.

(Một số sản phẩm của họ có chứa những hóa chất độc hại.)

- resident [ˈrezɪdənt] (n) : cư dân

Ví dụ: The local residents are angry at the lack of security in the neighborhood.

(Các cư dân địa phương phẫn nộ trước sự thiếu an ninh trong khu phố.)

- roof [ruːf] (n) : mái nhà

- select [sɪˈlekt] (v) : chọn lựa

- selection [sɪˈlekʃn] (n) : sự chọn lựa

Ví dụ: The restaurant offers the customers a selection of free desserts.

(Nhà hàng cho thực khách sự chọn lựa các món tráng miệng miễn phí.)

- serve [sɜːrv] (v) : phục vụ

- service [ˈsɜːrvɪs] (n) : sự phục vụ

Ví dụ: The food of the restaurant was delicious and the service was excellent.

(Thức ăn của nhà hàng thì ngon và sự phục vụ thì tuyệt vời.)

- shopping mall [ˈʃɑːpɪŋ məːl] (n) : trung tâm mua sắm có mái che

- surface mail [ˈsɜːrfɪs meɪl] (n) : thư gửi bằng đường bộ hoặc đường thủy

GRAMMAR

1/ Present perfect

2/ Use of 'since' and 'for'

3/ Comparison with *like*; (not) *as ... as*; *the same as*; *different from*

1/ Present perfect

(Thì hiện tại hoàn thành)

I/ Hình thức : 'have/has + past participle'

* Câu khẳng định - Affirmative:

I		
You	've	
We	have	worked
They		seen
He	's	come
She	has	
It		

*** Câu phủ định – Negative:**

I You We They	haven't have not	worked seen come
He She It	hasn't has not	

*** Câu hỏi – Question:**

Have	I you we they	worked? seen? come?
Has	he she it	

CHÚ Ý:

- Cụm động từ trong thì hiện tại hoàn thành gồm trợ động từ 'have' hoặc 'has' và động từ chính luôn ở dạng quá khứ phân từ.
- Hình thức quá khứ phân từ (past participle) của các động từ hợp qui tắc (regular verbs) chỉ thêm '-ed' như với thì quá khứ đơn. Nhưng có nhiều động từ không thêm '-ed' mà thay đổi khác thường, gọi là động từ bất qui tắc (irregular verbs). Sau đây là một số động từ bất qui tắc quen thuộc.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle	Meaning
be	was, were	been	thì, là, ở
buy	bought	bought	mua
eat	ate	eaten	ăn
go	went	gone	đi
have	had	had	có
know	knew	known	biết
lose	lost	lost	mất
meet	met	met	gặp
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	đọc
say	said	said	nói
see	saw	seen	thấy
sell	sold	sold	bán

speak	spoke	spoken	nói
take	took	taken	lấy
teach	taught	taught	dạy
tell	told	told	nói; kể
write	wrote	written	viết

II/ Cách dùng:

1/ Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ, nhưng kết quả vẫn còn trong hiện tại. Ví dụ:

- I have cleaned my room. Now, it's completely clean.

(Tôi đã dọn vệ sinh phòng tôi. Bây giờ nó hoàn toàn sạch sẽ.)

2/ Chúng ta có thể dùng 'ever' và 'never' với thì hiện tại hoàn thành để nói ai đó đã từng làm gì chưa, hoặc chưa từng làm việc gì. Ví dụ:

- Have you ever seen snow? (Bạn có bao giờ thấy tuyết chưa?)

- I've never seen snow in reality. I've only seen it in movies.

(Tôi chưa bao giờ thấy tuyết thực sự. Tôi chỉ thấy tuyết trong phim.)

3/ Chúng ta có thể dùng 'just' với thì hiện tại hoàn thành để nói ai đó vừa làm việc gì. Ví dụ:

- Mr. Jones has just bought a new car.

(Ông Jones vừa mới một chiếc xe ô-tô mới.)

4/ Chúng ta có thể dùng 'for' và 'since' với thì hiện tại hoàn thành để nói một hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ và kéo dài cho tới hiện tại được bao lâu. Ví dụ:

- Jane has been here for six months.

(Jane đã ở đây được sáu tháng nay.)

- We have lived here since 2001.

(Chúng tôi đã sống ở đây từ năm 2001.)

NOTE: Chúng ta KHÔNG dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành khi trong câu có thời gian rõ rệt. Chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn khi có chỉ rõ thời gian. Ví dụ:

- I met an old friend yesterday.

(Câu sai: I have met an old friend yesterday.)

* **Definite time** = Thời gian chỉ rõ gồm các từ sau:

- He wrote that letter	{	yesterday.
		two days ago.
		last month.
		on Monday.
		in 2006.

2/ Use of 'since' and 'for'

(Cách dùng 'since' và 'for')

a/ 'Since' + a specific time: Chúng ta dùng 'since' với một thời điểm cụ thể. 'Since' thường có nghĩa là: 'kể từ khi ...'. Ví dụ:

Since	{	2005
		January
		Monday
		May 15 th
		Seven o'clock
		Last year / last month, ...

- Miss Thanh has taught in this school since 2008.

(Cô Thanh đã dạy ở trường này kể từ năm 2008.)

- He has written the new book since March.

(Ông ấy đã viết cuốn sách mới kể từ tháng Ba.)

b/ 'For' + a length of time: Chúng ta dùng 'for' với một khoảng thời gian: bao nhiêu năm, tháng, ngày, giờ, Ví dụ:

For	{	two years
		six months
		five weeks
		ten days
		twenty minutes
		a long time

- My sister has worked in that office for two years.

(Chị tôi đã làm việc trong văn phòng đó được hai năm nay.)

- I've had this bicycle for only a month.

(Tôi có chiếc xe đạp này mới chỉ một tháng nay.)

NOTE: 'Since + clause': Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng 'since' với một mệnh đề. Chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn trong mệnh đề theo sau 'since'. Ví dụ:

- I have lived here since I was born.

(Tôi đã sống ở đây từ khi sinh ra đến nay.)

- My sister has worked there since she graduated from the university.

(Chị tôi đã làm việc ở đó từ khi chị tốt nghiệp đại học.)

3/ Comparison with *like; (not) as ... as; the same as; different from*

1/ **'like'** = giống như là ... : **'Subject + be + like + noun/pronoun'** (Chủ ngữ + be + 'like' + danh từ hoặc đại từ). Ví dụ:

- Your hat is like mine/my hat. (Nón của bạn giống của tôi.)
- That house is like a mushroom. (Ngôi nhà kia giống như một cây nấm.)

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta dùng câu hỏi: **'What + be + subject + like?'** = '... như thế nào?' Ví dụ:

- 'What is the weather like in your town?' 'It's sunny.'
(Thời tiết ở thành phố bạn như thế nào? 'Trời đang nắng.)
- 'What is your English teacher like?' 'She's very strict.'
(Cô giáo tiếng Anh của bạn như thế nào? 'Cô ấy rất nghiêm.)

Chúng ta cũng dùng **'look like'** = trông giống như Ví dụ:

- Susan looks like her father. She doesn't look like her mother.
(Susan trông giống ba. Cô ấy không giống mẹ.)

2/ **'(not) as + adj / adv + as'** = (không) bằng với Chúng ta dùng 'as ... as' hoặc 'not as ... as' với tính từ hoặc trạng từ. Ví dụ:

- This room is as large as that room.
(Căn phòng này rộng bằng phòng kia.)
- A bicycle is not as expensive as a motorbike.
(Một chiếc xe đạp thì không đắt tiền bằng một chiếc xe gắn máy.)
- I can't sing as well as my brother does. (Tôi không hát hay bằng anh tôi.)

3/ **'the same as + noun/pronoun'** = giống hệt như Chúng ta dùng 'the same as' với danh từ hoặc đại từ. Ví dụ:

- Your answer is the same as mine/my answer.
(Câu trả lời của bạn giống của tôi.)
- She is the same age as her husband. (Cô ấy cùng tuổi với chồng.)

4/ **'different from + noun/pronoun'** = khác với Chúng ta dùng 'different from' với danh từ hoặc đại từ. Ví dụ:

- This town is different from my hometown.
(Thành phố này khác với quê tôi.)
- A rabbit is quite different from a cat.
(Một con thỏ thì hoàn toàn khác với một con mèo.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete each sentence with the present perfect of the verb in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với thì hiện tại hoàn thành của động từ trong ngoặc.)

1. Mr. Anh has been a Math teacher in this school for five years. (be)
2. I _____ this man several times. (meet)
3. Betty _____ Terry for a long time. (know)
4. I _____ this book three times. (read)
5. I _____ that movie. Is it a good movie? (not, see)
6. Jane _____ fried rice before. This is her first time. (never, eat)
7. _____ Alice about our plan for the weekend? (you, tell)
8. It _____ here since February. (not, rain)
9. I keep a dog. I _____ it for a year. (have)
10. They _____ their house. They're going to live abroad. (just, sell)

EXERCISE 2: Complete the sentences with *since* or *for*. (Hoàn thành câu với *since* hoặc *for*.)

1. Mr. Wood has worked in this factory for twenty-five years.
2. My friend is very ill. He's been in the hospital since Saturday.
3. The weather is too bad. It has been cold and rainy _____ two weeks.
4. Mr. Frank has written the report _____ four hours.
5. The manager has spoken to a customer _____ 8 o'clock.
6. Miss Hoa has taught here _____ her family moved to this city.
7. Sally and Bill have been married _____ two years.
8. The children have been very happy _____ their mother came back home.
9. My parents are visiting our hometown. They've been there _____ three days now.
10. I have had music lessons _____ 2005.

EXERCISE 3: Complete the passage with the present perfect of one of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành đoạn văn với thì hiện tại hoàn thành của một trong các động từ sau. Hãy dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

visit	have	see	never be
just <u>receive</u>	study	be	<u>already</u> finish

I (1) have just received a letter from my **cousin**, Nam. He is in the United States now. He (2) has been there for five months. Nam is a student. He (3) has studied computer **science** for two years. He got a **scholarship** to study at a university in California six months ago. He (4) has taken three **courses** at the university. He (5) has visited **several** cities in the United States. He (6) has seen a lot of interesting places. Nam (7) has been **abroad** before, so he (8) has had a great time!

EXERCISE 4: Put the verbs in parentheses in the correct tense: the present perfect or the past simple. (Hãy viết thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc: thì hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì quá khứ đơn.)

I have just visited (1. just visit) my friend, Tan in the hospital. He has broken (2. break) his **leg** two days ago. He has been (3. be) in the hospital since he (4) has had (4. have) the **accident**. Some of Tan's friends have come (5. already, come) to visit him, but some of them have not heard (6. not, hear) about his accident **yet**. A friend of mine (7. tell) me about it yesterday morning, and I asked (8. ask) Lam, a friend who sits **beside** me in class, to come with me. I have known (9. know) Tan since he has begun (10. begin) to attend this class two years ago. We have been good friends **since then**.

EXERCISE 5: Complete the sentences using 'the same as' or 'different from'. (Hãy hoàn thành câu bằng cách dùng 'the same as' hoặc 'different from'.)

- Ted wears a red baseball cap. I also wear a red baseball cap. Ted's cap is the same as mine.
- Mr. Hope wears a cowboy hat. Mr. Black wears a panama hat. Mr. Hope's hat is different from Mr. Black's.
- Fiona drives a red Honda car. Emma drives a yellow Ford. Fiona's car is different from Emma's.
- Steven drives a white BMW. Mark also drives a white BMW. Steven's car is the same as Mark's.
- Mai has a Casio watch. Hoa has a Timex. Mai's watch is different from Hoa's.
- Lam has a Casio calculator. I also have a Casio calculator. Lam's calculator is the same as mine.
- Our family and the Taylors went on holiday together. We stayed at a different hotel from them.
- We live in a small house. They live in a large three-story house. Our house is quite different from theirs.
- This movie is about gangsters in Chicago. I saw a movie about Harry Potter. This movie is quite different from the movie I saw.
- I went to the theater to see 'Hero'. My friend also went to see 'Hero'. I saw a different movie from my friend did.

EXERCISE 6: Finish the sentence using 'not as ... as' so that it has the same meaning as the sentence printed before it. (Hãy hoàn thành câu bằng cách dùng 'not as ... as' để nó có ý nghĩa giống với câu in trước nó.)

1. Your watch is better than mine.

My watch is not as good as yours.

2. This city is more crowded than my hometown.

My hometown is _____

3. They live in a bigger house than ours.

Our house is _____

4. This magazine is more interesting than that one.

That magazine is _____

5. The climate in the South is hotter than that in the North.

The climate in the North is _____

6. My new shoes are more comfortable than my old ones.

My old shoes are _____

7. The Nile River is longer than the Mekong River.

The Mekong River is _____

8. Algebra is more difficult than arithmetic.

Arithmetic is _____

9. Your suitcase is heavier than mine.

My suitcase is _____

10. Car racing is more dangerous than sailing.

Sailing is _____

EXERCISE 7: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

- A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. Money is not as important _____ good health.

- A. than B. like C. from D. as

2. Peter doesn't look _____ his brother.

- A. as B. like C. same D. different

3. Your opinion about this subject is quite _____ from mine.
A. same B. different C. like D. as
4. What was the hotel _____ ? Was it comfortable or uncomfortable?
A. like B. look C. look like D. the same as
5. My friend is _____ age as me. He's 13 and I am, too.
A. the same B. as C. same old D. different
6. To me, nothing is _____ valuable as happiness.
A. more B. much C. as D. like
7. I don't know exactly when Miss Tam began teaching here. She's been in this school _____ quite a long time.
A. since B. when C. in D. for
8. The class has been in order _____ the teacher came in.
A. for B. when C. since D. after
9. When _____ you become interested in playing the guitar?
A. are B. have C. did D. were
10. Please, change channel. I _____ this program many times.
A. see B. have seen C. saw D. was seen

EXERCISE 8: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. Playing tennis is not as easy than playing badminton.
A B C D
2. I have known my best friend since we are at elementary school.
A B C D
3. Christopher Columbus has discovered America more than 500 years ago.
A B C D
4. Your story is the same of the one I read last week.
A B C D
5. How is a salesman different with a businessman?
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
comfort: sự tiện nghi	comfort: an ủi	comfortable: tiện nghi; thoải mái uncomfortable: không tiện nghi	comfortably: tiện nghi; thoải mái
- convenience: sự tiện lợi - inconvenience: sự bất tiện		- convenient: tiện lợi - inconvenient: bất tiện	- conveniently: tiện lợi - inconveniently: bất tiện
humidity: sự ẩm ướt; độ ẩm		humid: ẩm ướt	
- neighbor: người láng giềng - neighborhood: khu phố; lối xóm		- neighboring: ở gần; lân cận - neighborly: thân thiện; gần gũi	
- owner: người chủ - ownership: sự làm chủ	own: làm chủ; sở hữu	own: của riêng	
- product: sản phẩm - production: sự sản xuất	produce: sản xuất		
resident: cư dân	reside: cư ngụ	residential: thuộc về khu vực dân cư	
selection: sự lựa chọn; tuyển tập	select: lựa chọn	selective: có tuyển chọn	

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

- It is a great _____ to live near a good school and a shopping mall. (convenient)
- Most land in this area is in private _____. (owner)

3. He spends all his time on the computer. He feels more _____ with the computer than with people. (comfort)
4. The aim of the government is to keep good relations with _____ countries. (neighbor)
5. Customers have chance to win a new car when they buy this new _____ . (produce)
6. Most of the _____ in my neighborhood are very friendly. (reside)
7. These plants need heat and _____ to grow well. (humid)
8. A _____ of her short stories will be published soon. (select)
9. The chair looks nice, but it's very _____ to sit on. (comfort)
10. It was really _____ to phone her at midnight! (convenient)
11. They quarreled so loudly that the whole _____ could hear them. (neighbor)
12. Do you have your _____ room or do you share it with anyone? (owner)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

air-conditioned (adj)	: có máy lạnh
close by (adv)	: gần bên
concerned about (adj)	: lo âu về
discount (n)	: sự giảm giá
especially (adv)	: nhất là
in comfort	: một cách thoải mái
in order to	: để mà
surface mail	: thư đi bằng đường bộ

1. They are saving money so that they can live _____ when they are older.
2. It's cheaper to send your letter _____ than to send it airmail.
3. The mall is a good place to shop, _____ when the weather is very hot.
4. They advertise that customers can get a special _____ during the first two weeks.
5. The shops are offering a lot of presents _____ attract more customers.
6. The shopping mall is _____, so you won't feel hot even in summer.
7. Some residents are _____ the construction of the new shopping mall.
8. Our grandparents live _____, so we can visit them almost every day.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Which of the following words in each question is stressed on the second syllable? (Từ nào trong mỗi câu hỏi sau đây được đọc nhấn ở vần thứ hai?)

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. convenient | B. neighborhood | C. different | D. comfortable |
| 2. A. customer | B. resident | C. selection | D. organize |
| 3. A. restaurant | B. community | C. business | D. product |
| 4. A. concerned | B. photograph | C. kilogram | D. newcomer |
| 5. A. cultural | B. family | C. similar | D. delicious |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> end | B. <u>s</u> erve | C. <u>b</u> etter | D. <u>c</u> ontest |
| 2. A. <u>w</u> eigh | B. <u>n</u> eighbor | C. <u>p</u> aper | D. <u>f</u> riendly |
| 3. A. <u>a</u> rea | B. <u>c</u> areful | C. <u>a</u> irmail | D. <u>p</u> arcel |
| 4. A. <u>s</u> urface | B. <u>p</u> ancake | C. <u>t</u> ake | D. <u>f</u> ace |
| 5. A. <u>o</u> wner | B. <u>o</u> rganize | C. <u>k</u> nown | D. <u>c</u> older |

Unit

8

downloadsachmienphi.com

COUNTRY LIFE AND CITY LIFE

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

(Cuộc sống ở thôn quê và ở thành thị)

VOCABULARY

- access (to) ['ækses] (n) : sự tiếp cận
- accessible (to) [ə'sesəbl] (adj) : có thể tiếp cận; có thể đến được

Ví dụ: Some remote villages are assessible only by helicopter.

(Một số làng quê hẻo lánh chỉ có thể đến được bằng trực thăng.)

- definitely ['defɪnətli] (adv) : chắc chắn

Ví dụ: His behavior has definitely changed for the better since he started this school.

(Cách cư xử của cậu ấy chắc chắn đã thay đổi tốt hơn kể từ khi cậu ấy bắt đầu học trường này.)

- drought [draʊt] (n) : trận hạn hán

- entertain [ˌentər'teɪn] (v) : mua vui; giải trí
- entertainment [ˌentər'teɪnmənt] (n) : sự giải trí; mục giải trí

Ví dụ: There is free entertainment at the local cultural center on the weekend.
(Có các mục giải trí miễn phí ở nhà văn hóa địa phương vào cuối tuần.)

- facility [fə'sɪləti] (n) : tiện nghi

Ví dụ: The hotel has special facilities for welcoming disabled people.
(Khách sạn có những tiện nghi đặc biệt để đón tiếp những người khuyết tật.)

- flood [flʌd] (n) : trận lụt
- increase [ɪn'kri:s] (v) : gia tăng
- increase ['ɪŋkri:s] (n) : sự gia tăng

Ví dụ: Some people blame television for the increase in crime.
(Một số người đổ lỗi cho truyền hình về sự gia tăng tội phạm.)

- medical ['medɪkl] (adj) : thuộc về y khoa

Ví dụ: Recent advances in medical science mean that this illness can now be cured.
(Những tiến bộ gần đây về y khoa có nghĩa là căn bệnh này bây giờ có thể chữa khỏi.)

- migrant ['maɪgrənt] (n) : di dân
- migrate ['maɪgreɪt] (v) : di di dân; di cư

Ví dụ: Many birds migrate south in the winter.
(Nhiều loài chim di cư về miền nam trong mùa đông.)

- migration [maɪ'greɪʃn] (n) : sự di dân
- overcrowding [ˌoʊvər'kraʊdɪŋ] (n): tình trạng quá tải dân số
- peace [pi:s] (n) : hòa bình
- peaceful ['pi:sfl] (adj) : bình yên
- permanent ['pɜ:rmənənt] (adj) : thường xuyên
- permanently ['pɜ:rmənənli] (adv) : thường xuyên

Ví dụ: In the end, he decided to live permanently in that small town.
(Cuối cùng ông ấy quyết định sống thường trú ở thành phố nhỏ ấy.)

- plentiful ['plentɪfl] (adj) : có rất nhiều; dư thừa

Ví dụ: Tropical fruits are plentiful in the markets.
(Các loại trái cây nhiệt đới có rất nhiều ở các chợ.)

- province ['prɒ:vɪns] (n) : tỉnh
- relative ['relatɪv] (n) : thân nhân; người họ hàng

Ví dụ: Tuan is one of my close relatives.
(Tuấn là một trong những người họ hàng gần của tôi.)

- remote [ri'moʊt] (adj) : xa xôi; hẻo lánh
 Ví dụ: People in the remote mountain villages still live without electricity or running water.
 (Những người ở vùng miền núi xa xôi vẫn sống thiếu điện và nước máy.)
- rural ['rʊrəl] (adj) : thuộc về thôn quê
 Ví dụ: There is almost no illiteracy in the rural areas.
 (Gần như không còn nạn mù chữ ở những vùng nông thôn.)
- simple ['sɪmpl] (adj) : đơn giản
 Ví dụ: Your job will be simple once you have learned to use the computer.
 (Công việc của anh sẽ đơn giản một khi anh đã học sử dụng máy tính.)
- strain (on) [streɪn] (n) : sự căng thẳng; áp lực
 Ví dụ: The last few weeks before the final exam put a strain on some students.
 (Một ít tuần lễ trước kì thi cuối cấp đã tạo sự căng thẳng đối với một số học sinh.)
- struggle ['strʌɡl] : (v) tranh đấu; (n) sự tranh đấu
 Ví dụ: She will never give up her struggle to save her son's life.
 (Bà ấy sẽ không bao giờ từ bỏ sự tranh đấu để cứu mạng đứa con trai.)
- traffic jam ['træfɪk dʒæm] (n) : vụ kẹt xe
- tragedy ['trædʒədi] (n) : bi kịch
 Ví dụ: It's a tragedy that he's lost his job and his wife is seriously ill in hospital.
 (Thật là một bi kịch khi ông ấy mất việc làm và vợ thì bệnh nặng ở bệnh viện.)
- typhoon [tai'fu:n] (n) : cơn bão nhiệt đới
- unpleasant ['pleznt] (adj) : tệ hại; không thú vị = not pleasant
 Ví dụ: I know he said some unpleasant things about me.
 (Tôi biết anh ấy đã nói một vài điều không thú vị về tôi.)
- urban ['ɜ:rbən] (adj) : thuộc về thành thị
 Ví dụ: Air pollution has increased in urban areas in recent years.
 (Sự ô nhiễm không khí đã gia tăng ở khu vực thành thị trong mấy năm gần đây.)
- view [vju:] (n) : cảnh; tầm nhìn
 Ví dụ: The view from the top of the mountain is breathtaking.
 (Phong cảnh nhìn từ đỉnh núi thật là hùng vĩ.)
- well-paid [wel'peɪd] (adj) : được trả lương cao
 Ví dụ: She expects to get a well-paid job after she graduated from college.
 (Cô ấy mong sẽ kiếm được một việc làm có lương cao sau khi tốt nghiệp đại học.)

GRAMMAR

- 1/ Present progressive
- 2/ Spelling of Verb+ing
- 3/ Comparative and superlative adjectives

1/ Present progressive (Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

I/ Hình thức : 'am / is / are + Verb-ing'

* Câu khẳng định - Affirmative:

I	'm am	working playing swimming
He	's	
She	is	
It		
We	're are	
You		
They		

* Câu phủ định - Negative:

I	'm not am not	working playing swimming
He	's not	
She	isn't	
It	is not	
We	're not	
You	aren't	
They	are not	

* Câu hỏi - Question:

Am	I	working? playing? swimming?
Is	he	
	she	
	it	
Are	we	
	you	
	they	

II/ Cách dùng:

a/ Chúng ta dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra hiện thời, ngay lúc đang nói. Ví dụ:

- 'What are you doing?' 'I'm looking for my pen. Have you seen it?'
(*Bạn đang làm gì vậy?* 'Tôi đang tìm cây bút. Bạn có thấy nó đâu không?')

- Look! That man is climbing over the wall!

(*Nhìn kìa! Ông kia đang trèo qua tường!*)

b/ Chúng ta cũng dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để diễn tả một hành động sẽ làm theo dự định. Chúng ta thường dùng các từ chỉ thời gian tương lai như: *tomorrow*, *next week*, ... , khi dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để diễn tả tương lai. Ví dụ:

- 'What are you doing tomorrow?' 'I'm not working tomorrow. I'm staying home and cleaning my room.'

(*Ngày mai bạn sẽ làm gì?* 'Ngày mai tôi sẽ không đi làm. Tôi sẽ ở nhà và dọn dẹp căn phòng.')

- We're having a small party this weekend. Do you want to join us?

(*Chúng tôi sẽ tổ chức một tiệc vui nhỏ cuối tuần này. Bạn có muốn tham gia không?*)

2/ Spelling of Verb+ing (Cách viết 'động từ + ing')

Khi thêm '-ing' vào động từ, chúng ta cần chú ý các cách viết khác nhau tùy theo nhóm động từ, như sau:

Nhóm động từ	Ví dụ
1/ Động từ + 'ing': ta thêm '-ing' vào hầu hết động từ và không cần thay đổi gì.	learn – learning teach – teaching study – studying read – reading
2/ Các động từ tận cùng có chữ 'e' mà trước nó là phụ âm, thì bỏ 'e' rồi thêm 'ing'.	drive – driving ride – riding write – writing smile – smiling
3/ Các động từ một vần tận cùng có MỘT phụ âm và trước nó có MỘT nguyên âm, thì nhân đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm 'ing'.	run – running swim – swimming hit – hitting rob – robbing

CHÚ Ý: Ta không nhân đôi hai phụ âm: 'w, x'	row – rowing fix – fixing
4/ Khi động từ có hai vần mà tận cùng có một phụ âm và trước nó có một nguyên âm, thì chỉ nhân đôi phụ âm nếu âm cuối được đọc nhấn .	begin – beginning occur – occurring prefer – preferring
CHÚ Ý: Ta không nhân đôi phụ âm khi âm cuối KHÔNG được đọc nhấn.	happen – happening listen – listening visit – visiting
5/ Các động từ tận cùng có 'ie' thì đổi thành 'y' rồi thêm 'ing'.	lie – lying die – dying tie – tying

3/ Comparative and superlative adjectives

(Tính từ so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất)

Ngoài cách so sánh bằng: '(not) as' chúng ta có hình thức tính từ so sánh hơn (comparative) và so sánh nhất (superlative). Ví dụ:

- The River Nile is *longer* than the River Mekong.

(Sông Nile dài hơn sông Cửu Long.)

- The Nile is *the longest* river in the world.

(Sông Nile là con sông dài nhất thế giới.)

Khi dùng tính từ với hình thức so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất, chúng ta phân loại tính từ làm hai nhóm: tính từ ngắn (short adjectives) và tính từ dài (long adjectives).

1/ Short adjectives + '-er/-est':

- Đối với các tính từ ngắn, chúng ta thêm '-er' vào tính từ khi so sánh hơn, và thêm '-est' khi so sánh nhất. Chú ý: chúng ta dùng mạo từ 'the' khi so sánh nhất.
- Tính từ ngắn là các tính từ chỉ có một vần (một âm tiết), hoặc các tính từ có hai vần (hai âm tiết) nhưng âm cuối là 'y'.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
tall	taller	the tallest
short	shorter	the shortest
long	longer	the longest
small	smaller	the smallest

- Đối với các tính từ tận cùng có **MỘT** phụ âm, trước nó có **MỘT** nguyên âm, thì nhân đôi phụ âm trước khi thêm ‘-er/-est’. Ví dụ:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
big	bigger	the biggest
hot	hotter	the hottest
fat	fatter	the fattest
thin	thinner	the thinnest

- Đối với các tính từ có hai vần tận cùng có ‘y’, chúng ta đổi ‘y’ thành ‘i’ rồi thêm ‘-er/-est’. Ví dụ:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
happy	happier	the happiest
easy	easier	the easiest
busy	busier	the busiest
lucky	luckier	the luckiest

II/ ‘more / the most’ + long adjectives:

- Đối với các tính từ dài, chúng ta không thêm ‘-er/-est’; chúng ta thêm ‘more’ trước tính từ khi so sánh hơn, và thêm ‘the most’ khi so sánh nhất.
- Tính từ dài là các tính từ có hai vần trở lên (ngoại trừ các tính từ tận cùng có ‘y’).

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
modern	more modern	the most modern
famous	more famous	the most famous
intelligent	more intelligent	the most intelligent
expensive	more expensive	the most expensive

III/ Irregular comparatives and superlatives: Một số tính từ khi so sánh không theo các quy tắc trên mà thay đổi bất thường, đó là:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst
far	farther / further	the farthest / furthest
old	older / elder	the oldest / eldest
little	less	the least
much / many	more	the most

- Một số ví dụ với tính từ so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất:
 - 'Which is bigger: this city or your hometown?' 'This city is bigger.'
(*Nơi nào lớn hơn: thành phố này hay quê của bạn? Thành phố này lớn hơn.*)
 - A laptop is more expensive than a typewriter.
(*Máy tính xách tay đắt tiền hơn máy đánh chữ.*)
 - 'Which mountain is the highest in the world?' 'Mount Everest is the highest. It's over 8,400 meters high.'
(*Núi nào cao nhất thế giới? Núi Everest cao nhất. Nó cao hơn 8.400 mét.*)
 - Phong Nha is the most famous cave in Vietnam.
(*Phong Nha là hang động nổi tiếng nhất Việt Nam.*)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete each sentence with the present progressive of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với thì hiện tại tiếp diễn của những động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

read	try	change	leave	become
work	increase	wait	lose	bring

1. This city is changing very quickly.
2. Life is getting harder; most people find it difficult to earn money now.
3. More people are losing their jobs because of the economic depression.
4. Lan says that she is inviting her cousin to the party.
5. My brother has just graduated from the university; now, he is looking to find a job.
6. More young people are leaving the country for the big cities to look for work.
7. Scientists say that the rate of pollution in the cities is increasing.
8. I am finishing this book. I promise I'll lend it to you when I finish it.
9. Please, go and answer the door! Someone is waiting outside!
10. You can't use the computer now. I am waiting on it!

EXERCISE 2: Complete the conversations with the present progressive of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành các đoạn đối thoại với thì hiện tại tiếp diễn của các động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

fly	go	eat	do	leave
have	visit	travel	stay	meet

- 1/ A: What are you doing this weekend?
 B: I am visiting my grandparents in the countryside with my parents.
 We are staying there until Sunday afternoon.

2/ A: What are your plans for this evening?

B: I _____ to a cybercafe to send some e-mails. Then, I _____ my friend, Luisa, at the English Conversation Club.

3/ A: I _____ a party this Saturday evening. Would you like to join us?

B: Thank you very much, but I'm afraid I can't. I _____ out with my parents because it's my Dad's birthday.

4/ A: My sister _____ for Hanoi on business tomorrow.

B: How is she going? _____ she _____ or _____ she _____ by train?

A: Flying. It's the quickest and the most comfortable means of transportation now.

EXERCISE 3: Complete the conversations with the correct tense of the verbs in parentheses. Use the present progressive or the present simple. (Hoàn thành các đoạn đối thoại với thì thích hợp của động từ trong ngoặc. Dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn hoặc hiện tại đơn.)

1/ A: Nam, are you listening (you, listen) to me?

B: Yes, I am, Dad. You want (want) me to take out the garbage. Right?

2/ A: Where are the children? _____ (they, watch) TV?

B: No, they aren't. They _____ (play) computer games.

3/ A: What _____ (you, do) on Sunday mornings?

B: I _____ (usually, stay) in bed until 9 o'clock. However, I _____ (not, get up) late this Sunday because I have to see a friend off at 8 o'clock.

4/ A: _____ (you, know) that young man over there?

B: No, I _____ (not, think) so. Why _____ (you, talk) with me about him now?

5/ A: Why _____ (those people, look) at us? Do you know them?

B: No. I think it's because you _____ (wear) a beautiful, colorful dress.

EXERCISE 4: Complete each sentence with the comparative form of one of the following adjectives. Use each adjective only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức so sánh hơn của một trong các tính từ sau. Dùng mỗi tính từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>sweet</i>	<i>clean</i>	<i>far</i>	<i>busy</i>	<i>comfortable</i>
<i>wet</i>	<i>old</i>	<i>intelligent</i>	<i>good</i>	<i>nice</i>

1. Have you just cleaned the room? It looks much cleaner .
2. The new generation of robots are _____ than the old ones.
3. 'Which of these hats do you prefer?' 'Both of them are good, but I think the yellow one is _____.'
4. *This country is much _____ than Sudan in Africa. It has more rain than Sudan.*
5. 'Is your house far from the school?' 'Yes, my house is _____ from the school than yours is.'
6. I think Chinese food is _____ than French food. I prefer Chinese food.
7. 'Mr. Alex seems very busy.' 'Yes. He's _____ than he used to be.'
8. 'Who is _____ : Brian or Fred?' 'It's Brian. Brian was born in 1995; Fred was born in 1998.'
9. Oranges are _____ than lemons.
10. This hotel is _____ than the hotel we stayed in last year.

EXERCISE 5: Complete each sentence with the superlative form of one of the following adjectives. Use each adjective only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức so sánh nhất của một trong các tính từ sau. Dùng mỗi tính từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>bad</i>	<i>lazy</i>	<i>funny</i>	<i>rich</i>	<i>crowded</i>
<i>good</i>	<i>hot</i>	<i>cold</i>	<i>big</i>	<i>intelligent</i>

1. The boss says Jack is the laziest employee in the office.
2. Kim is one of _____ students in the class.
3. Antarctica is _____ place in the world.
4. 'Which is _____ football club in the world?' 'I think it's Manchester United. It won three famous cups in 2009.'
5. Alaska is _____ state in the United States. No other state is bigger than it.
6. Bill Gates, who founded Microsoft, is one of _____ men in the United States.
7. 'Which city is _____ in the world?' 'It's Tokyo, the capital of Japan. Its population is the largest.'
8. This is _____ wine I have ever drunk. I've never drunk any worse wine than this.
9. The Sahara Desert is _____ place in the world.
10. I have seen several movies by Mr. Bean, but this one is _____ of all. I couldn't stop laughing through the movie.

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. The Taj Mahal in India is one of _____ beautiful buildings in the world.
A. more B. most C. the best D. the most
2. There is almost no air pollution at the South Pole. The South Pole has _____ air in the world.
A. cleaner B. cleanest
C. the cleanest D. the most clean
3. Everyone in my family can cook well, but my Mom is _____.
A. the good of all B. the best in all
C. the better of all D. the best of all
4. Your English is improving. It's getting _____ every day.
A. best B. the best C. better D. gooder
5. Of the two daughters they have, Janet is _____ than Mary.
A. beautiful B. more beautiful
C. most beautiful D. the most beautiful
6. The tests we do at school are getting _____ every week.
A. harder B. hardest C. the hardest D. more hard
7. Listen! Jane _____ a beautiful song on the piano!
A. play B. plays C. is playing D. was played
8. When the fall comes, leaves _____ yellow and brown.
A. turn B. are turning C. turned D. have turned
9. 'Is your father at home now?' 'No, he _____ in his office.'
A. works B. is working C. worked D. working
10. 'What are your plans for the evening?' 'I _____ home and watching a movie on TV.'
A. stay B. will stay C. am staying D. stayed

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. Pluto is the farther planet from the sun in our solar system.
A B C D
2. From all the students in my class, Hung is the most intelligent.
A B C D
3. This is the baddest problem we have ever had this year.
A B C D
4. Sorry, but I can't go out with you tonight; I help my Mom with the housework.
A B C D
5. Is the Mississippi the longer river in North America?
A B C B

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
access: sự tiếp cận	access: tiếp cận; đi vào	- accessible: có thể tiếp cận; dễ đến được - inaccessible: khó tiếp cận; khó đến gần	
- crowd: đám đông - overcrowding: sự quá tải về dân cư		- crowded: đông đúc - overcrowded: quá đông đúc; dân cư quá tải	
entertainment: sự hoặc mục giải trí	entertain: giải trí; chiêu đãi	entertaining: vui vẻ; vui nhộn	
- friendship: tình bạn - friendliness: sự thân thiện		- friendly: thân thiện - unfriendly: không thân thiện	
medicine: thuốc; y học		medical: thuộc về y học	
- migrant: di dân - migration: sự di cư	migrate: di cư		
peace: sự hòa bình		peaceful: hoà bình; yên tĩnh	peacefully: một cách yên tĩnh
pleasure: niềm vui	please: làm hài lòng	- pleasant: vui vẻ; dễ chịu - unpleasant: không vui; khó chịu	pleasantly: một cách vui vẻ

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

1. People in remote villages do not have good _____ care. (medicine)
2. Money cannot buy true _____. (friend)
3. The child was sleeping _____ in its baby carriage. (peace)
4. The island is only _____ by boat. (access)
5. The authorities are trying to solve the problem of _____ in the city. (crowd)
6. The authorities of the city are practicing an open-door policy for _____ workers. (migrate)
7. The television is a great source of _____. (entertain)
8. In this _____ city, every small piece of land is worth kilos of gold. (crowd)
9. It is often _____ to think about the mistakes we have made. (pleasant)
10. One of the advantages of living in the country is that it is so _____. (peace)
11. That remote area is _____ by car. You can only get there by helicopter. (access)
12. You may think Sally is _____, but she isn't; she's just shy. (friend)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

increase (n)	: sự gia tăng
in that case (idiom)	: trong trường hợp đó
permanently (adv)	: thường xuyên
plentiful (adj)	: nhiều vô số; dư thừa
relatives (n)	: thân nhân; họ hàng
remote (adj)	: xa xôi; hẻo lánh
rural (adj)	: thuộc về nông thôn
well-paid (adj)	: được trả lương cao

1. Lam is one my _____ ; in fact, he is my aunt's son.
2. Do you want to live here _____ or just temporarily?

3. They live in a _____ village in the mountain. It is nearly two hundred kilometers from the nearest town.
4. More and more people are forced to migrate from _____ to urban areas in search of work.
5. *As a result of migration, there is a rapid _____ in the population of urban areas.*
6. Doctors say that we may be facing the worst flu epidemic. _____, all schools will have to be closed.
7. Susan never gives up that _____ job; she gets a very good salary in it.
8. It's difficult to find fresh vegetables on the island, but fish is _____.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

1. A. traffic B. prefer C. village D. peaceful
2. A. accessible B. facility C. opinion D. definitely
3. A. remote B. friendly C. medical D. modern
4. A. expensive B. permanent C. traditional D. electric
5. A. migrant B. human C. tragedy D. create

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

1. A. move B. lose C. cover D. prove
2. A. brought B. drought C. thought D. taught
3. A. struggle B. result C. uncle D. urban
4. A. migrant B. simple C. city D. opinion
5. A. there B. nothing C. them D. father

PROGRESS TEST 4

(Unit 7 and Unit 8)

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

1. The climate in the north is quite different _____ that in the south.
A. with B. of C. to D. from
2. Most of the people in my neighborhood have lived here _____ over ten years.
A. since B. for C. during D. when
3. A cat is not as friendly _____ a dog.
A. than B. with C. from D. as
4. In a shopping mall, customers will shop in _____ and won't notice the weather.
A. comfort B. product C. community D. situation
5. This city is _____ than my hometown.
A. large B. larger C. more large D. better large
6. We must hurry; the train _____ in a few minutes!
A. leave B. left C. is leaving D. would leave
7. My mother is _____ warm-hearted person in the world.
A. more B. most C. the most D. the more
8. Traveling by plane is _____ than other means of transportation.
A. more convenient B. most convenient
C. convenienter D. the most convenient

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. Miss Thao graduated from university in 2012, and she _____ at this school since then. (teach)
2. Mr. Lam is 59 years old now. He _____ from work next year. (retire)
3. There are a lot of people at the bus stop. They _____ for the last bus. (wait)
4. Paula _____ ill while she was on holiday in Singapore. (fall)

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. Flowers are _____ in Dalat almost all year round. (plenty)
2. They don't wash the dishes right after dinner; they usually leave it until the _____ morning. (follow)

3. The shopping mall is usually crowded, _____ on the weekend. (special)
 4. They have repaired the waiting-room for the _____ of their customers. (convenient)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box.

There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

<i>problem</i>	<i>worry</i>	<i>examples</i>	<i>household</i>	<i>neighbors</i>
----------------	--------------	-----------------	------------------	------------------

I really love my neighborhood. It is a quiet, safe place with nice (1) _____. Even though it has the regular amount of noise of any place, there are many peaceful moments. You can hardly hear any noise when most people are at work.

I feel safe in my neighborhood. The police drive around it every day and the kids can play outside safely. Since there is not much traffic, we don't (2) _____ too much about cars.

My neighbors are really good people. They watch out for each other and this makes where I live a nice place. If anyone has a (3) _____ with their car or even something in their house, a neighbor is always there to help. One day, I couldn't start my car, and my neighbor asked what was wrong. I explained that my car wouldn't start, and he got my car going again. This is just one of the many (4) _____ of how my neighbors are the best people I know.

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

The English countryside between the towns is like a carpet of many colours. In spring and summer, the fields, meadows and woods are light green or dark green, and the gardens are green, red, blue, yellow and white with flowers. In autumn the leaves on the trees change their colour from green to yellow, brown and red. They fall from the trees in winter.

You can see many cows and sheep in the English meadows, near the rivers and on the sides of the mountains. There are sheep-farms and cattle-farms in all parts of England.

The English summer is never very hot, and the winter is not very cold. Spring and autumn are very cool. Cold winds blow in winter and there are cool winds in summer. Snow does not fall often in England. The sky over England is often blue, but the wind often bring grey clouds from the sea, and rain falls in all seasons.

1. In England, the leaves fall from the trees in autumn.
2. English farmers usually raise cows and sheep.
3. In England, the summer is very hot and the winter is very cold.
4. It only rains in winter in England.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. A store is not as large as a shopping mall.

A shopping mall is

2. Wendy is better than any other student in the class.

Wendy is the

3. They began to live in this neighborhood in 2010.

They have

4. Your answer is the same as mine.

My answer is not

Unit

9

A FIRST-AID COURSE (Khóa học sơ cứu)

VOCABULARY

- ambulance [ˈæmbjələns] (n) : xe cứu thương
 - awake [əˈweɪk] (adj) : tỉnh thức
- Ví dụ: I couldn't stay awake although I had drunk a cup of strong coffee.
(Tôi đã không thể tỉnh thức được mặc dầu đã uống một ly cà-phê đậm.)
- bleed [bli:d] – bled [bled] – bled (v) : chảy máu
 - burn [bɜ:m] (n) : vết bỏng
 - calm down [ˈkɑ:m daʊn] (v) : giữ bình tĩnh
 - case [keɪs] (n) : vụ; trường hợp
 - conscious [ˈkɔ:nʃəs] (adj) : tỉnh táo; có ý thức

Ví dụ: The victim was still conscious although he was badly injured.

(Nạn nhân vẫn còn tỉnh táo mặc dù bị thương nặng.)

- cover [ˈkʌvər] (v) : che đậy; bao phủ
- crutch [krʌtʃ] (n) : cái nạng
- cut [kʌt] (n) : vết đứt
- dressing [ˈdresɪŋ] (n) : băng cá nhân
- ease [i:z] (v) : làm giảm đau
- elevate [ˈelɪveɪt] (v) : nhắc lên cao

Ví dụ: It is important that the injured leg should be elevated.

(Điều quan trọng là cái chân bị thương phải được đặt lên cao.)

- emergency [ɪ'mɜːrdʒənsi] (n) : tình trạng khẩn cấp

Ví dụ: That door is only used in emergency.

(Cánh cửa kia chỉ được dùng trong tình trạng khẩn cấp.)

- eye chart [ˈaɪ tʃɑːrt] (n) : bảng chữ cái để đo thị lực
- faint [faɪnt] (v) : ngất xỉu
- fall asleep [fɔːl ə'sliːp] (v) : ngủ thiếp đi

Ví dụ: My granddad often falls asleep while he is watching television.

(Ông tôi thường ngủ thiếp đi trong khi xem truyền hình.)

- first-aid [ˌfɜːrst'eɪd] (n) : việc sơ cứu
- force [fɔːrs] (v) : bắt buộc; bắt ép
- handkerchief [ˈhæŋkətʃɪf] (n) : khăn tay
- injured [ˈɪndʒəd] (adj) : bị thương
- lower [ˈləʊər] (v) : hạ thấp xuống

Ví dụ: The door was so low that I had to lower my head to get through it.

(Cánh cửa quá thấp đến nỗi tôi phải hạ thấp đầu mới qua được.)

- minimize [ˈmɪnɪmaɪz] (v) : làm giảm thiểu

Ví dụ: Keeping your hands clean can minimize the risk of infection.

(Giữ đôi tay sạch có thể giảm thiểu nguy cơ nhiễm trùng.)

- patient [ˈpeɪʃnt] (n) : bệnh nhân
- pressure [ˈpreʃər] (n) : sức ép; áp lực
- revive [rɪˈvaɪv] (v) : làm hồi tỉnh; hồi sinh

Ví dụ: The doctors made every effort to revive the patient.

(Các bác sĩ đã nỗ lực hết mình để làm hồi tỉnh bệnh nhân.)

- shock [ʃɑːk] (n) : tình trạng bị choáng hoặc sốc
- sterile [ˈsterəl] (adj): vô trùng; không có vi trùng
- sting [stɪŋ] – stung [stʌŋ] – stung (v) : (côn trùng) chích; đốt
- stretcher [ˈstretʃər] (n) : cái cáng

Ví dụ: The injured player was carried off the field on a stretcher.

(Cầu thủ bị chấn thương đã được khiêng ra khỏi sân bằng cáng.)

- tight (adj) : chặt

Ví dụ: I can't unscrew the top of this jar – it's too tight.

(Tôi không thể mở cái nắp hũ này được – nó chặt quá.)

- towel [ˈtaʊəl] (n) : khăn tắm
- victim [ˈvɪktɪm] (n) : nạn nhân
- wheelchair [ˈwiːltʃeər] (n) : xe lăn (cho người tàn tật)
- wound [wuːnd] : (n) vết thương; (v) làm bị thương

Ví dụ: The nurse cleaned the wound carefully before putting a bandage on it.

(Cô y tá làm sạch vết thương thật kỹ trước khi băng nó lại.)

- wounded [ˈwuːndɪd] (adj) : bị thương

GRAMMAR

1/ *in order to, so as to*

2/ Future simple

3/ Modal *will* to make requests, offers and promises

1/ *in order to, so as to*

(= để mà ...)

A/ Chúng ta dùng '*in order to + infinitive*' hoặc '*so as to + infinitive*' để chỉ mục đích của một hành động. Ví dụ:

- He took an aspirin { *in order to*
so as to } ease the pain.

(Anh ấy dùng một viên aspirin để làm giảm cơn đau.)

- She used a bandage { *in order to*
so as to } cover the wound.

(Cô ấy dùng cuộn băng vải để băng bó vết thương.)

B/ Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng dạng phủ định với '*in order not to + infinitive*' hoặc '*so as not to + infinitive*' với ý nghĩa : để mà không Ví dụ:

- He opened the door quietly { *in order not to*
so as not to } wake everybody up.

(Anh ấy mở cửa nhẹ nhàng để không đánh thức mọi người dậy.)

- I write a new word many times { *in order not to*
so as not to } forget it.

(Tôi viết một từ mới nhiều lần để không quên nó.)

2/ Future simple

(Thì tương lai đơn)

I/ Hình thức: 'will + bare infinitive'

1/ Câu khẳng định - Affirmative:

I		
You		
He		go
She	'll	meet
It	will	ask
We		
They		

2/ Câu phủ định – Negative:

I		
You		
He		go
She	won't	meet
It	will not	ask
We		
They		

3/ Câu hỏi – Question:

	I	
	you	
	he	go?
Will	she	meet?
	it	ask?
	we	
	they	

II/ Cách dùng:

- Chúng ta dùng thì tương lai đơn để nói một hành động sẽ làm hoặc để tiên đoán một việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai. Ví dụ:

- I hope the weather will be nice tomorrow.

(Tôi hy vọng thời tiết sẽ tốt ngày mai.)

- I will finish high school in four years' time.

(Tôi sẽ học xong trung học trong bốn năm nữa.)

- People won't use gasoline for their vehicles in the future.

(Người ta sẽ không dùng xăng để chạy xe trong tương lai.)

- Chúng ta cũng dùng thì tương lai đơn để nói một quyết định ngay tức thời. Ví dụ:

- 'Ooh, this bag is too heavy.' 'Well, I'll help you carry it.'

(‘Ôi, cái túi này nặng quá.’ ‘Tôi sẽ giúp anh mang nó.’)

- 'Why don't we invite Sally to our party?' 'OK. I'll call her today.'

(‘Sao chúng ta không mời Sally đến dự tiệc nhỉ?’ ‘Được thôi. Tôi sẽ gọi cho cô ấy hôm nay.’)

3/ Modal *will* to make requests, offers and promises

(Động từ khiếm khuyết '*will*' dùng để yêu cầu, tự nguyện và hứa hẹn)

Chúng ta cũng dùng động từ '*will*' trong đàm thoại hằng ngày để diễn tả những tình huống sau:

1/ Dùng '*will*' để yêu cầu:

- 'Will you open the window, please? It's hot in here.' 'Sure.'
(*Làm ơn mở cửa sổ giùm. Trong này nóng quá.* 'Vâng.')
- Will you water the plants while I'm away on holiday?
(*Anh tưới cây giùm trong thời gian tôi đi nghỉ mát xa nhé?*)

2/ Dùng '*will*' để nói tự nguyện làm việc gì cho ai:

- I will do the washing up for you, if you want.
(*Tôi sẽ rửa chén bát cho bạn, nếu bạn muốn.*)
- I will help you clean your room. (*Tôi sẽ giúp bạn dọn vệ sinh phòng.*)

3/ Dùng '*will*' để hứa hẹn sẽ làm việc gì:

- 'You haven't changed the light bulb yet.' 'Oh, I forgot. I'll do it today.'
(*Anh chưa thay cái bóng đèn.* 'Ồi, tôi quên mất. Tôi sẽ làm hôm nay.')
- I'll never make this mistake again. I promise.
(*Em sẽ không phạm lỗi lầm này nữa. Em xin hứa.*)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Match the two halves of the sentences using '*in order to*' or '*so as to*'. (Hãy ghép hai nửa của các câu sau bằng cách dùng '*in order to*' hoặc '*so as to*'.)

A	B
1. I turned on the radio	a. find the population of Japan
2. Mr. Tu took a walk in the park	b. chase a stray dog away
3. She was wearing boots	c. listen to the news
4. He called the fire department	d. buy a dictionary
5. He put his money in a bank	e. help the victims of the flood
6. He went to a bookstore	f. get some fresh air and exercise
7. They're decorating the room	g. use it later
8. I clapped my hands and yelled	h. report a fire
9. I looked on the Internet	i. keep her feet warm and dry
10. We're collecting money	j. hold a class party

1. I turned on the radio in order to/so as to listen to the news.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

EXERCISE 2: Combine each pair of the following sentences using 'in order to + infinitive' or 'so as to + infinitive'. (Hãy kết hợp mỗi cặp câu sau đây bằng cách dùng 'in order to + infinitive' hoặc 'so as to + infinitive'.)

Example: Mary went to the post office. She wanted to mail a letter.

Mary went to the post office in order to mail a letter.

Or: *Mary went to the post office so as to mail a letter.*

1. Steve is going to the bank. He wants to cash a check.
.....
2. I'm going to the hospital. I want to visit a friend.
.....
3. Mr. Ba stopped at a news-stand on his way to the office. He wanted to buy a newspaper.
.....
4. Miss Hien often goes to that cafeteria. She wants to have lunch.
.....
5. Miss Carol wrote to the school. She wanted to find a teaching job.
.....
6. When I saw Tim, I touched his shoulder. I wanted to get his attention.
.....
7. I called the hotel yesterday. I wanted to book a room for my holiday.
.....
8. I reached into my pocket. I wanted to get the door key.
.....
9. My father often plays badminton. He wants to keep fit.
.....
10. I stayed up very late last night. I wanted to finish my homework.
.....

EXERCISE 3: Combine each pair of the following sentences using ‘*in order to/so as to + infinitive*’ or ‘*in order not to/so as not to + infinitive*’. (Hãy kết hợp mỗi cặp câu sau bằng cách dùng ‘*in order to/so as to + infinitive*’ hoặc ‘*in order not to/so as not to + infinitive*’.)

Examples: a/ He left early. He wanted to catch the early bus.

He left early in order to catch the early bus.

b/ He left early. He didn’t want to miss the early bus.

He left early in order not to miss the early bus.

1. I opened the window. I wanted to get some fresh air.

2. We’re going on holiday. We want to relax after so many days of hard work.

3. She turned down the TV. She didn’t want to disturb her roommate.

4. They’re going to a restaurant. They want to celebrate their wedding anniversary.

5. I ran all the way to school. I didn’t want to be late for the first lesson.

6. He didn’t tell the truth. He didn’t want to disappoint her.

7. She hid the present. She wanted to give me a surprise.

8. She’s going on a diet. She doesn’t want to put on weight.

9. I’m learning very hard. I don’t want to fail my final exams.

10. I set my alarm clock. I wanted to get up at five a.m.

EXERCISE 4: Complete each sentence using ‘*will*’ or ‘*won’t*’ with one of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng cách dùng ‘*will*’ hoặc ‘*won’t*’ với một trong các động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>increase</i>	<i>not drive</i>	<i>rise</i>	<i>discover</i>
<i>not use</i>	<i>change</i>	<i>travel</i>	<i>replace</i>

1. Scientists predict that the sea-level _____ a lot in twenty years' time.
2. Clothing styles _____ much in the next ten years.
3. Some people think computers _____ teachers at school in the future.
4. In the 22nd century, people _____ present automobiles anymore.
There will be new means of transportation.
5. People _____ to the Moon or Mars for their holidays in the future.
6. The population of the world _____ much in the next decades.
7. In the next century, people _____ the present telephones.
They will communicate in a new way.
8. Astronauts _____ other forms of life in the universe.

EXERCISE 5: Complete the conversations using 'will' with one of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hoàn thành các đoạn đối thoại bằng cách dùng 'will' với một trong các động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>do</i>	<i>get</i>	<i>wake</i>	<i>phone</i>	<i>join</i>
<i>repair</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>wait</i>	<i>buy</i>	<i>give</i>

1. A: Did you return Nam's phone call?
 B: Oh, no! I forgot. I will phone him right away.
2. A: Do you remember Jane? She's in town for a few days.
 B: Really? Great! I _____ her a call.
3. A: I'm going for a short walk. Do you want to come with me?
 B: Great! I _____ you. I need some fresh air, too.
4. A: I'd like something to drink.
 B: Sure. I _____ you a glass of water. Would you like some ice in it?
5. A: Are you going to the supermarket this afternoon?
 B: Yes. Why?
 A: I need some shampoo.
 B: OK. I _____ you some.
6. A: I haven't had breakfast yet!
 B: Really? I _____ you an omelet.
7. A: Could someone please turn on the fan?
 B: Certainly. I _____ it.
8. A: Do you want to walk to the meeting together?
 B: Sure. I _____ for you in front of my house.

9. A: My motorbike broke down again!

B: Don't worry. I _____ it for you soon.

10. A: Would you please wake me up at six tomorrow?

B: I always get up very early. I _____ you up then.

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

- A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. He looked on the Internet _____ find an online catalog of the university.
A. so as B. in order that C. to D. for
2. She often does crossword puzzles just _____.
A. so as to fun B. in order that fun
C. so as for funning D. for fun
3. They sent their children to a famous school _____ a good education.
A. to getting B. in order to get
C. so as getting D. for to get
4. My grandfather works in his garden _____ the pure pleasure of it.
A. for B. to C. in order to D. so as
5. He's trying to work hard and save the money _____ a house.
A. in order buying B. to buying
C. so as he buys D. so as to buy
6. 'Your sister phoned you this morning when you were out.'
'Really? I _____ her soon.'
A. call B. will call C. am calling D. have called
7. '_____ you please give me a hand with this bookcase? It's too heavy!' 'Sure.'
A. Must B. May C. Should D. Will
8. 'I'm going to the supermarket. Are you free now?' 'Yes. I _____ you there on my motorbike.'
A. taking B. take C. will take D. am taking
9. '_____ you like to come to my birthday party, Nam?' 'I'd love to. When is it?'
A. Will B. Would C. Could D. Do
10. My niece is four years old now. She _____ be five next June.
A. will B. shall C. is going D. would

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. The boy stood on tiptoes so as to reaching the top shelf.

A B C D

2. It is getting dark. Will you please to turn on the light?

A B C D

3. I sent a card to Mai in order that wish her a happy birthday.

A B C D

4. She closed the window so as to not hear the noise from the street.

A B C D

5. 'Will you like to drink white or black coffee, Madam?' 'White, please.'

A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
blood: máu	bleed: chảy máu	bloody: đẫm máu	
calmness: sự bình tĩnh	calm: trấn an; làm dịu lại	calm: bình tĩnh; yên tĩnh	calmly: một cách bình tĩnh
consciousness: sự ý thức; sự tỉnh táo		- conscious: tỉnh táo; có ý thức - unconscious: bất tỉnh	
injury: vết thương	injure: làm bị thương	injured: bị thương	
- patient: bệnh nhân - patience: sự kiên nhẫn		- patient: kiên nhẫn - impatient: thiếu kiên nhẫn	- patiently: kiên nhẫn - impatiently: thiếu kiên nhẫn

sleep: giấc ngủ	sleep: ngủ	- asleep: đang ngủ - sleepy: buồn ngủ - sleepless: không ngủ	
wound: vết thương	wound: làm bị thương	wounded: bị thương	

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

1. He was knocked down by a taxi and lost _____. (conscious)
2. The doctor explained _____ what she should do at the time. (patient)
3. His speech was so boring that everybody felt very _____. (sleep)
4. When she saw the accident, she _____ called the police and an ambulance. (calm)
5. The war between the two countries was short but _____. (blood)
6. His knee _____ forced him to leave the match so early. (injure)
7. I lost _____ with her whimsical behavior. (patient)
8. The _____ soldiers were rescued by a helicopter. (wound)
9. Fortunately, nobody was _____ in the car accident. (injure)
10. He spoke to the children and tried to make them feel safe with his _____. (calm)
11. When the ambulance arrived, the victim was still _____. (consciousness)
12. I was almost exhausted after a _____ night. (sleep)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

awake (adj)	: tỉnh táo
ease (v)	: làm dịu bớt
elevate (v)	: nâng cao lên
emergency (n)	: tình trạng khẩn cấp
immediately (adv)	: ngay lập tức
instruction(s) (n)	: lời chỉ dẫn
revive (v)	: làm hồi tỉnh
sterile dressing (n)	: băng vải tiệt trùng

1. We got lost because your _____ were unclear.
2. The nurse covered the wound on my arm with a _____.
3. One of them _____ gave the victim first-aid while the other called the ambulance.
4. They managed to _____ the injured driver after he had lost consciousness.
5. Taking an aspirin can help you _____ the pain.
6. The strong coffee I had drunk before bedtime kept me _____ all night.
7. The doctor told the nurse to _____ the patient's injured leg.
8. This staircase can only be used in an _____.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vào thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vào một.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. describe | B. conscious | C. advice | D. awake |
| 2. A. pressure | B. promise | C. injured | D. revive |
| 3. A. victim | B. blanket | C. arrange | D. patient |
| 4. A. elevate | B. instruction | C. emergency | D. condition |
| 5. A. ambulance | B. immediately | C. handkerchief | D. minimize |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. adv <u>i</u> ce | B. rev <u>i</u> ve | C. v <u>i</u> ctim | D. minim <u>i</u> ze |
| 2. A. l <u>o</u> wer | B. c <u>r</u> owded | C. sh <u>o</u> wer | D. fl <u>o</u> wer |
| 3. A. c <u>u</u> t | B. m <u>u</u> st | C. sh <u>u</u> t | D. p <u>u</u> t |
| 4. A. press <u>u</u> re | B. pat <u>i</u> ent | C. dress <u>i</u> ng | D. consc <u>i</u> ous |
| 5. A. f <u>o</u> und | B. pron <u>o</u> unce | C. ar <u>o</u> und | D. w <u>o</u> unded |

RECYCLING (Việc tái chế)

VOCABULARY

- compost [ˈkɑːmpoʊst] (n) : phân xanh
- deposit [drˈpɑːzɪt] (n) : tiền đặt cọc

Ví dụ: They put a deposit of \$10,000 on the house, and paid the balance four weeks later.

(Họ đã đặt tiền cọc 10.000 đô-la cho ngôi nhà và trả phần còn lại bốn tuần sau.)

- dung [dʌŋ] (n) : phân động vật
- fabric [ˈfæbrɪk] (n) : vải
- fertilize [ˈfɜːrtəlaɪz] (v) : bón phân
- fertilizer [ˈfɜːrtəlaɪzər] (n) : phân bón

Ví dụ: Using too much chemical fertilizers is not good for the soil.

(Dùng quá nhiều phân hóa chất thì không tốt cho đất đai.)

- garbage [ˈgɑːrbɪdʒ] (n) : rác
- glassware [ˈglæsweɪ] (n) : đồ thủy tinh
- melt [melt] (v) : tan chảy

Ví dụ: In that area, the snow usually melts in March.

(Trong vùng đó tuyết thường tan chảy vào tháng ba.)

- mesh [meʃ] (n) : tấm lưới
- mix [mɪks] (v) : pha trộn

Ví dụ: If you mix red with yellow, you'll get orange.

(Nếu bạn pha trộn màu đỏ với màu vàng, bạn sẽ có màu cam.)

- mixture [ˈmɪktʃər] (n) : một hỗn hợp; sự pha trộn
- packaging [ˈpækɪdʒɪŋ] (n) : bao bì, giấy gói

Ví dụ: Attractive packaging can help to sell products.

(Bao bì hấp dẫn có thể giúp bán chạy sản phẩm.)

- protect [prəˈtekt] (v) : bảo vệ; che chở
- overpackaged [ˌoʊvərˈpækɪdʒd] (adj) : có quá nhiều lớp bao bì

Ví dụ: Some people refuse to buy goods that are overpackaged, because they feel that it is harmful to the environment.

(Một số người từ chối mua hàng hóa có quá nhiều lớp bao bì vì họ cảm thấy điều này có hại cho môi trường.)

- refill [ˌriːˈfɪl] (v) : làm đầy lại; rót đầy lại

- represent [ˌreprɪˈzent] (v) : đại diện
- representative [ˌreprɪˈzentatɪv] (n) : người đại diện

Ví dụ: The committee consists of 50 representatives from the high schools in the city.

(Ủy ban gồm có 50 đại diện từ các trường trung học trong thành phố.)

- reuse [ˌriːˈjuːz] (v) : dùng lại
- soak [soʊk] (v) : ngâm nước

Ví dụ: People usually soak the rice for hours before wrapping it in banana leaves.

(Người ta thường ngâm gạo trong nước nhiều giờ trước khi gói lại bằng lá chuối.)

- tire [ˈtaɪər] (n) : vỏ xe; lốp xe = tyre
- wrap [ræp] (v) : gói lại

Ví dụ: The woman at that counter will wrap the goods for you.

(Người phụ nữ ở quầy kia sẽ gói hàng hóa cho bạn.)

GRAMMAR

1/ Passive voice

2/ Passive sentences with the present simple, 'will', and 'should'

3/ Adjectives + to-infinitive; adjectives + that-clause

1/ Passive voice

(Dạng bị động)

- Khi chúng ta muốn nói ai hoặc điều gì gây ra việc gì, chúng ta dùng dạng chủ động gọi là 'Active voice':
 - Nam collects stamps. (*Nam sưu tầm tem thư.*)
 - Most Americans throw old tires away.

(*Hầu hết người Mỹ đều ném bỏ vỏ lốp xe cũ.*)
- Khi chúng ta không biết ai gây ra, hoặc không muốn nói đến người hoặc điều gì gây ra, mà chỉ chú ý tới hành động, chúng ta dùng dạng bị động gọi là 'Passive voice':
 - Garbage is collected every day. (*Rác được thu gom hàng ngày.*)
 - Millions of old tires are thrown away every year.

(*Hàng triệu vỏ lốp xe cũ bị ném bỏ mỗi năm.*)

• **Câu bị động với tương lai đơn ‘will’: ‘will be + past participle’**

Examples:

Active: Someone will clean the room tomorrow.

Passive: The room *will be cleaned* tomorrow.
(Căn phòng sẽ được dọn vệ sinh ngày mai.)

Active: They *will grow* more trees along the street.

Passive: More trees *will be grown* along the street.
(Thêm nhiều cây sẽ được trồng dọc theo đường phố.)

Active: They *will sell* their house soon.

Passive: Their house *will be sold* soon.
(Ngôi nhà của họ sẽ sớm được bán.)

• **Câu bị động với ‘should’ (= nên): ‘should be + past participle’**

Examples:

Active: You *should clean* the room every day.

Passive: The room *should be cleaned* every day.
(Căn phòng nên được dọn vệ sinh mỗi ngày.)

Active: They *should grow* more trees along the street.

Passive: More trees *should be grown* along the street.
(Nhiều cây nên được trồng thêm dọc theo đường phố.)

Active: People *should bring* the cans back for recycling.

Passive: The cans *should be brought* back for recycling.
(Các lon đồ hộp nên được mang trả lại để tái chế.)

3/ Adjectives + to-infinitive; adjectives + that-clause

(Tính từ + ‘to’-nguyên mẫu; tính từ + mệnh đề ‘that’)

Chúng ta thường dùng ‘to-nguyên mẫu’ theo sau một số tính từ với cấu trúc sau:

• **‘It + be + adjective + to-infinitive’ :**

- It is difficult to understand astronomy.

= *Understanding astronomy is difficult.*

(Hiểu được môn thiên văn học thì khó.)

Sau đây là một số tính từ có thể được dùng với cấu trúc này:

<i>difficult</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>hard</i>	<i>impossible</i>	<i>dangerous</i>
<i>expensive</i>	<i>cheap</i>	<i>nice</i>	<i>interesting</i>	<i>safe</i>

Examples:

- It's easy to learn to play badminton.
= *Learning to play badminton is easy.*
(Học đánh cầu lông thì dễ.)
- It's dangerous to climb that mountain.
= *Climbing that mountain is dangerous.*
(Leo ngọn núi đó thì nguy hiểm.)
- It was nice to see you again.
= *Seeing you again was nice.*
(Thật là vui khi gặp lại bạn.)

CHÚ Ý: Chúng ta có thể dùng thêm 'for somebody' sau tính từ, và cấu trúc câu sẽ là: **'It + be + adjective + for somebody + to-infinitive'**.

Examples:

- It is difficult for me to understand her.
= *Understanding her is difficult for me.*
(Hiểu được cô ấy đối với tôi là khó.)

Chúng ta cũng có thể thay chủ ngữ 'It' bằng một đại từ hoặc danh từ khác, như thế cấu trúc câu sẽ là: **'Subject + be + adjective + to-infinitive'**.

Examples:

- Jenny is hard to understand.
= *It is hard to understand Jenny.*
(Thật khó để hiểu được Jenny.)
- This machine is easy to use.
= *It is easy to use this machine.*
(Sử dụng máy này thì dễ thôi.)
- John is very interesting to talk to.
= *It's very interesting to talk to John.*
(Nói chuyện với John thì thật là thú vị.)

- **'Subject + be + adjective + that-clause'** : Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng mệnh đề 'that' sau một số tính từ như: *happy, delighted, certain, sure, afraid, ...*

Examples:

- I am very happy that you are well again.
(Tôi rất vui mừng vì bạn lại khỏe mạnh.)
- I am afraid that I can't help you.
(Tôi e rằng tôi không thể giúp đỡ bạn được.)
- She was certain that there was something wrong.
(Cô ấy chắc chắn rằng có điều gì đó nhầm lẫn.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete the passage with the present simple passive voice of the verbs in parentheses. (Hãy hoàn thành đoạn văn sau với hình thức bị động thì hiện tại đơn của các động từ trong ngoặc.)

The letters are collected (1. collect) from the mailbox. Then they _____ (2. take) to the post office by a mailman. At the post office, they _____ (3. stamp) by a machine so that the stamps _____ (4. not use) again. Next the letters _____ (5. sort) carefully and put into bags before they _____ (6. send) to other post offices for further sorting. Finally, each letter _____ (7. deliver) by a mailman to the address that _____ (8. show) on the envelope.

EXERCISE 2: Change the following sentences to passive voice. (Hãy đổi các câu sau sang dạng bị động.)

Example: - Someone cleans the windows every month.

The windows are cleaned every month.

1. People speak English in most international conferences.

English _____

2. People make cheese from milk.

Cheese _____

3. They cut the grass once a week.

The grass _____

4. People often eat raw fish in Japan.

Raw fish _____

5. People pick the fruit in the summer.

The fruit _____

6. Someone always keeps the key in that box.

The key _____

7. They store all the information in the computer.

All the information _____

8. They don't include service in the bill.

Service _____

9. They show many good movies on this channel.

Many good movies _____

10. People often drink strong coffee in my town.

Strong coffee _____

EXERCISE 3: Change the following sentences to passive voice. (Hãy đổi các câu sau sang dạng bị động.)

Example: - Someone will make a cake for your birthday.

A cake *will be made for your birthday.*

1. They will repair the runway of this airport soon.

The runway of this airport

2. You should write your address on the parcel.

Your address

3. They will play traditional music at the reception.

Traditional music

4. Someone should test your eyes again.

Your eyes

5. They should build more houses for the poor.

More houses

6. They won't invite their next door neighbors to their party.

Their next door neighbors

7. Someone will tell you what to do then.

You

8. You should read this passage carefully.

This passage

9. They will pay you in cash.

You

10. You shouldn't wash these clothes in hot water. —

These clothes

EXERCISE 4: Rewrite the following sentences using the structure '*It + be + adjective (for sb) + to-infinitive*'. (Hãy viết lại các câu sau bằng cách dùng cấu trúc '*It + be + adjective (for sb) + to-infinitive*'.)

1. Learning to ride a bicycle is not difficult.

..... *It's not difficult to learn to ride a bicycle.*

2. Driving in the rain at night is very dangerous.

.....

3. Drinking this water is not safe.

.....

4. Giving you any more information is impossible.

.....

5. Traveling by train is cheap for you.

6. Learning to use the computer is hard for him.

7. Living in that city is expensive for us.

8. Talking with you is very nice.

9. Contacting their office in Paris was impossible.

10. Going on a journey with you is safe.

EXERCISE 5: Complete the letter using the structure 'adjective (for sb) + to-infinitive' with one of the following pairs of adjective + verb. Use each pair only once. (Hãy hoàn thành bức thư bằng cách dùng cấu trúc 'adjective (for sb) + to-infinitive' với một trong các cặp tính từ + động từ sau. Dùng mỗi cặp chỉ một lần.)

<i>disappointed / think</i>	<i>delighted / get</i>	<i>interesting / me / be</i>
<i>happy / have</i>	<i>difficult / you / start</i>	<i>surprised / hear</i>

Dear Mai,

I was very (1) delighted to get your e-mail this morning. It has been a long time since you last sent me anything. I'm very (2) _____ that you are studying in San Francisco. I thought you were still in the country. However, I'm a little (3) _____ that we won't be able to meet again for a long time. I think it was (4) _____ a class in the United States. Is everything alright now? I believe you are really (5) _____ so many opportunities to practice your English there. You should know that it is very (6) _____ a friend of yours. I hope we'll meet again soon!

Best regards,

Tran Duc Trung

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in

B. at

C. on

D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. You will be _____ a calculator on your birthday.
A. give B. gave C. given D. to give
2. Each workman _____ 50,000 dong a day to do the work.
A. pay B. is paid C. paying D. are paid
3. The winner will _____ a gold watch by the organizers.
A. award B. awarding C. be awarding D. be awarded
4. Music _____ to the children at most kindergartens.
A. teaches B. teaching C. is taught D. is teaching
5. Your dogs should _____ inside the fence.
A. be kept B. be keeping C. keep D. kept
6. It is not _____ to play a musical instrument well.
A. easy to learn B. to learn easy
C. easy learn D. to easy learn
7. 'I'm very glad _____ you.' 'My pleasure.'
A. meet B. to meet C. meeting D. met
8. _____ very expensive to own a car.
A. There's B. This is C. It's D. That's
9. Listening to your lectures _____ very interesting.
A. is B. are C. it is D. that is
10. I was _____ you failed your driving test again.
A. disappointing to hear B. disappointed to hear
C. disappointing heard D. disappointed heard

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. I'm delighting that you have passed your examination.
A B C D
2. It is cheaper to cycling around the town than to take a taxi.
A B C D
3. All information should be keep in different files.
A B C D
4. I will be invited some of my classmates to my birthday party.
A B C D
5. The mail is normally deliver before 8 o'clock every morning.
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
emptiness: sự trống rỗng	empty: làm trống rỗng	empty: trống rỗng	
- environment: môi trường environmentalist: người hoạt động để bảo vệ môi trường		environmental: thuộc về môi trường	
fertilizer: phân bón	fertilize: bón phân	fertile: phì nhiêu; sung mãn	
- industry: công nghiệp industrialization: việc công nghiệp hóa	industrialize: công nghiệp hóa	industrial: thuộc về công nghiệp	
reduction: sự giảm bớt	reduce: giảm bớt		
representative: người đại diện	represent: đại diện cho	representative (of): tiêu biểu	
use: cách dùng	- use: dùng - reuse: dùng lại	- useful: có ích - useless: vô ích	usefully: có ích

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

- This novel is not _____ of all his works. (represent)
- The outbreak of the flu epidemic resulted in a sharp _____ in the number of tourists. (reduce)
- Recycling programs have helped to solve some of the _____ problems. (environment)
- These plants grow well in _____ soil by the river. (fertilize)
- This book is very interesting; it contains lots of _____ information. (use)
- The river has been used for many years as an _____ waste dump. (industry)
- All of the students in my class elected Huang as our _____. (represent)
- The silence and _____ of the house made the children feel frightened. (empty)

9. Farmers use different kinds of _____ to enrich the soil. (fertilize)
10. We are very surprised at the speed of the _____ of the city. (industrial)
11. Companies are encouraging people to buy more by _____ the prices of their products. (reduce)
12. The money should be more _____ spent on the recycling plan. (use)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

contact (v)	: liên hệ
garbage (n)	: rác
household (adj)	: thuộc về trong nhà
instead of (prep)	: thay vì
melt (v)	: tan chảy
organization (n)	: một tổ chức
packaging (n)	: bao bì
recycling (n)	: việc tái chế

1. Attractive _____ can help to sell products.
2. _____ of paper can save trees in the forest.
3. My father usually helps with the _____ chores when he has time.
4. Anyone who is interested in this program can _____ this number for more information.
5. 'Friends of the Earth' is an _____ that shows people how to protect the environment and save natural resources.
6. How often do they collect _____ in your neighborhood?
7. The old man just had a piece of bread _____ a full meal.
8. Global warming causes the ice at the Poles to _____.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A. certain | B. relieved | C. forward | D. public |
| 2. A. afraid | B. machine | C. believe | D. follow |
| 3. A. delighted | B. dangerous | C. exercise | D. difficult |
| 4. A. confirm | B. mixture | C. liquid | D. garbage |
| 5. A. mankind | B. reduce | C. instead | D. vegetable |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kʌm]

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. cl <u>o</u> th | B. cl <u>o</u> thes | C. thr <u>o</u> w | D. th <u>o</u> se |
| 2. A. f <u>o</u> od | B. fr <u>u</u> it | C. gr <u>o</u> up | D. g <u>o</u> od |
| 3. A. c <u>o</u> mpost | B. c <u>o</u> mpare | C. c <u>o</u> mplain | D. c <u>o</u> mplete |
| 4. A. sp <u>e</u> cific | B. sp <u>e</u> cial | C. b <u>e</u> tter | D. <u>e</u> xercise |
| 5. A. arr <u>i</u> val | B. l <u>i</u> quid | C. man <u>k</u> ind | D. p <u>i</u> pe |

PROGRESS TEST 5
(Unit 9 and Unit 10)

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

- The nurse told Lan to use a towel or a handkerchief _____ stop the bleeding.
A. so that B. in order that
C. so as to D. in order
- _____ my parents, I am going to find a part-time job to do in the evening.
A. In order to help B. So as to helping
C. In order that to help D. So as that I helping
- "_____ you get that book for me, please?" "Certainly. Here you are."
A. Will B. Must C. Should D. Do
- "Don't let the injured _____ asleep. Keep him awake!" the nurse said.
A. come B. fall C. drop D. go
- Waste _____ for thousands of years.
A. has recycled B. recycled
C. has been recycled D. has been recycling
- It is not easy _____ everyone understand the need of recycling waste.
A. make B. made C. to making D. to make

7. Instead of _____ waste paper away, we should keep it for recycling program.
A. throw B. to throw C. threw D. throwing
8. Household and garden waste _____ to make compost.
A. used B. is used C. is using D. has used

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. In Oregon, people must put a deposit on all drink cans. The deposit will _____ when they bring the cans back for recycling. (return)
2. Nowadays, in Britain, all milk bottles _____ and refilled. (clean)
3. In ancient Egypt, people _____ paper from a plant called papyrus. (make)
4. The students are looking forward to _____ the results of the exams. (know)

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. Both the teachers and the students were _____ with the results of the exams. (delight)
2. "My pen is running out ink." "You can _____ it with my ink." (fill)
3. Do you remember all the first-aid _____ in an emergency? (instruct)
4. You must cool the burns immediately in order to _____ damage to the skin. (minimum)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box. There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

save	garbage	earth	own	notice
------	---------	-------	-----	--------

Recycling is important because it helps the earth. When you go shopping with your mom and dad, you will (1) _____ a special symbol on some things they buy like cleaning products or garbage bags. This symbol means that a product is a recycled product.

Recycling helps the (2) _____ and makes the world a better place to live in. By recycling items that you do not need any more, new things will be made. By using these new recycled products, you will (3) _____ trees and other important natural resources because raw materials will not need to be used to produce products any longer.

There are many things that can be recycled: cars, steel products, tires, rubber products, glass, plastic, computers, cell phones, paper, food and paint cans, etc.

By recycling unneeded products you are not only able to stop the overflow of trash but you are able to make new products as well. If your parents (4) _____ a car and decide to get a new one, the old one can be recycled and the recycled steel can make a new car.

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

Students at an elementary school in Chicago studied ecology. They learned *that there was so much trash that it was a world-wide problem. They asked their teacher if they could do something to help solve the problem. "It is a very big problem," she said, "but if every community helps, that would really make a difference."*

The students decided to set up a Saturday Recycling Center. They would collect trash. Then they would get it to a place. The students used the Internet to find out more about recycling in Chicago. They found that there are 15 "drop off" sites, places where people can bring trash to get it recycled.

The students had to figure out how to get the trash to the site. They went to talk with the minister of the church near their school. They knew that he drove a van and helped people. They went to ask him to help with their plan.

The minister agreed to help. He said he would pick up the recycling one Saturday each month after the students pack it. He said it was such a good plan they could use the churchyard for the Recycling Center. They decided it would be once a month, on Saturday afternoon. They chose the first Saturday of the month.

1. One of the biggest world-wide problems was that there was too much trash.
2. There are 15 places in Chicago where trash can be recycled.
3. The minister of the church agreed to help pack the trash for the students.
4. The minister said it was such a good plan that they could use his house for the Recycling Center.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. He is trying to study very hard so that he can get a scholarship.
In order to
2. Please, give my best regards to your parents.
Will ?
3. They soak old newspapers in water overnight.
Old newspapers
4. Glass has been recycled in our country for a long time.
People

TRAVELING AROUND VIET NAM

(Đi du lịch vòng quanh Việt Nam)

VOCABULARY

- accommodation [ə,kʌ:mə'deɪʃn] (n): chỗ ở
 Ví dụ: Is hotel accommodation included in the price of our tour?
 (Chỗ ở khách sạn có bao gồm trong giá tua du lịch của chúng tôi không?)
- arrival [ə'raɪvl] (n) : khi đến
 Ví dụ: On arrival at the airport, you will be met by your aunt and uncle.
 (Khi đến phi trường con sẽ được cô và chú đón.)
- cave [keɪv] (n) : hang động
- crop [kra:p] (n) : mùa vụ
 Ví dụ: Rice is the most important crop in southeast Asia countries.
 (Lúa là mùa vụ quan trọng nhất tại các nước Đông Nam Á.)
- departure [di'pɑ:tʃər] (n) : việc khởi hành
 Ví dụ: Our departure was delayed because of bad weather.
 (Việc khởi hành của chúng tôi bị chậm trễ vì thời tiết xấu.)
- destination [ˌdestɪ'neɪʃn] (n) : nơi đến
- eternal [ɪ'tɜ:nl] (adj) : vĩnh cửu
- giant [ˈdʒaɪənt] (adj) : khổng lồ
- heritage [ˈherɪtɪdʒ] (n) : di sản
 Ví dụ: The old town has been recognized as a world heritage site.
 (Phố cổ này được công nhận là địa điểm di sản thế giới.)
- limestone [ˈlaɪmstəʊn] (n) : đá vôi
- luggage [ˈlʌɡɪdʒ] (n) : hành lí
 Ví dụ: Customs officers will check our luggage at the airport.
 (Nhân viên hải quan sẽ kiểm tra hành lí của chúng ta tại phi trường.)
- magnificent [mæɡ'nɪfɪsnt] (adj) : lộng lẫy; tráng lệ
- mountainous [ˈmaʊntənəs] (adj) : thuộc về miền núi
- recognize [ˈrekənaɪz] (v) : công nhận; nhận ra
- rice paddy [raɪs 'pædɪ] (n) : ruộng lúa
- sight [saɪt] (n) : phong cảnh
 Ví dụ: We would like to travel by car to see the sights of the coast.
 (Chúng tôi muốn đi bằng ô-tô để xem phong cảnh bờ biển.)

- sugar cane ['ʃʊgər keɪn] (n) : cây mía
- suggest [sə'dʒest] (v) : đề nghị
- suggestion [sə'dʒestʃn] (n) : lời đề nghị

Ví dụ: The teacher is always open to our suggestions.

(Cô giáo luôn sẵn sàng lắng nghe những lời đề nghị của chúng tôi.)

- sunbathe ['sʌnbetʃ] (v) : tắm nắng
- tribe [traɪb] (n) : bộ lạc
- tribal ['traɪbl] (adj) : thuộc về bộ lạc
- vegetarian [,vedʒə'teəriən] (n) : người ăn chay
- water buffalo ['wɑ:tər 'bʌfələʊ] (n) : con trâu
- waterfall ['wɑ:tərfo:l] (n) : thác nước

Ví dụ: The sight of the waterfall is amazing.

(Phong cảnh thác nước thật tuyệt vời.)

GRAMMAR

1/ **'-ed'** and **'-ing'** participles

2/ Requests with

'Would / Do you mind if ... ?'

'Would / Do you mind + V-ing?'

1/ **'-ing'** and **'ed'** participles

(Hiện tại phân từ và quá khứ phân từ)

- **Present participle** : Hiện tại phân từ là hình thức động từ được thêm **'-ing'**. Chúng ta còn gọi là **'-ing'** participles.
- **Past participle** : Quá khứ phân từ là hình thức động từ thêm **'-ed'**, hoặc với các động từ bất quy tắc, là hình thức ở cột thứ ba trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc; ví dụ: quá khứ phân từ của **'see'** là **'seen'**. Chúng ta còn gọi quá khứ phân từ là **'-ed'** participles.
- **'-ing'** và **'-ed'** participles có thể dùng trong nhiều chức năng khác nhau, nhưng trong phạm vi bài này chúng ta chỉ xét đến cách dùng hiện tại và quá khứ phân từ để giản lược một mệnh đề và mô tả cho một danh từ đứng trước nó.

1/ ‘-ing’ participles: Chúng ta có thể dùng hình thức hiện tại phân từ để giản lược một mệnh đề và mô tả cho danh từ đứng trước nó khi câu nói có ý nghĩa chủ động (active), nghĩa là mô tả người hoặc vật làm hoặc gây ra điều gì. Ví dụ:

- Thay vì dùng hai mệnh đề độc lập với dấu chấm, chúng ta có thể kết hợp và giản lược bằng cách dùng ‘-ing’ participles:

a/ (The man is talking to the teacher. The man is my father.)

- The man *talking* to the teacher is my father.

(Người đàn ông đang nói chuyện với cô giáo là ba tôi.)

b/ (The woman is sitting at that desk. The woman is the manager.)

- The woman *sitting* at that desk is the manager.

(Người phụ nữ đang ngồi ở bàn giấy kia là bà giám đốc.)

2/ ‘-ed’ participles: Chúng ta có thể dùng hình thức quá khứ phân từ để giản lược một mệnh đề và mô tả cho danh từ đứng trước nó khi câu nói có ý nghĩa bị động (passive), nghĩa là mô tả người hoặc vật bị/được làm điều gì. Ví dụ:

- Thay vì dùng hai mệnh đề độc lập với dấu chấm, chúng ta có thể kết hợp và giản lược bằng cách dùng ‘-ed’ participles (quá khứ phân từ):

a/ (Fish is cooked by my mother. Fish always tastes delicious.)

- Fish *cooked* by my mother always tastes delicious.

(Món cá do mẹ tôi nấu luôn luôn có vị ngon.)

b/ (The bridge was built of stone. The bridge is over 100 years old.)

- The bridge *built* of stone is over 100 years old.

(Cây cầu được xây bằng đá đã trên 100 năm tuổi.)

2/ Requests with ‘Would / Do you mind if _ ?’ and ‘Would / Do you mind + V-ing?’ (Câu yêu cầu với ‘Would / Do you mind if _ ?’ và ‘Would / Do you mind + V-ing?’)

Khi muốn yêu cầu người nào một cách lịch sự và trang trọng, chúng ta có thể dùng động từ ‘mind’ (= cảm phiền) theo hai cách sau:

A/ ‘Would you mind if I + past simple?’

Hoặc: ‘Do you mind if I + present simple?’

Chúng ta dùng cấu trúc này khi muốn làm điều gì và cần hỏi ý kiến hoặc xin phép người khác một cách lịch sự.

CHÚ Ý: Khi dùng 'Would you mind' thì động từ trong mệnh đề 'if' ở thì quá khứ đơn. Khi dùng 'Do you mind' thì động từ trong mệnh đề 'if' ở thì hiện tại đơn. Ví dụ:

- Would you mind if I *opened* the window?

- Do you mind if I *open* the window?

(Ông có phiền gì không nếu tôi mở cửa sổ ra?)

- Would you mind if I *took* this chair away?

- Do you mind if I *take* this chair away?

(Chị có phiền gì không nếu tôi mang chiếc ghế này đi?)

CHÚ Ý: Khi muốn nói đồng ý đối với lời yêu cầu 'Would / Do you mind ...?', chúng ta thường dùng câu trả lời phủ định, như 'Not at all.' Ví dụ:

- 'Would you mind if I turn on the fan?' 'Not at all.'

(‘Bạn có phiền gì nếu như tôi mở quạt lên?’ ‘Không hề gì.’)

B/ 'Would you mind + V-ing?'

Hoặc: 'Do you mind + V-ing?'

Chúng ta dùng cấu trúc này khi muốn lịch sự yêu cầu người khác làm việc gì.

CHÚ Ý: Khi dùng một động từ trực tiếp theo sau 'mind', chúng ta phải dùng hình thức 'Verb + ing', gọi là 'gerund = danh động từ'. Ví dụ:

- Would you mind *closing* the door?

Hoặc: Do you mind *closing* the door?

(Xin vui lòng đóng cửa lại giùm?)

- Would you mind *not smoking* here?

Hoặc: Do you mind *not smoking* here?

(Xin vui lòng đừng hút thuốc ở đây?)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Combine each pair of the following sentences using the present participle (Verb + ing). (Hãy kết hợp mỗi cặp câu sau bằng cách dùng hiện tại phân từ.)

Example: (The boy standing next to Nam. He is a new comer.)

- The boy standing next to Nam is a new comer.

1. (The man is walking beside my father. He is my uncle.)

The man

2. (The girl is going on picnic with us. She is my next door neighbor.)

The girl

3. (The tourists are speaking to my sister. They come from Canada.)
The tourists
4. (The man is working with my brother. He knows five languages.)
The man
5. (The student is doing the Math problem on the board. He is the best in this class.)
The student
6. (The artist is painting over there. He is famous for his landscapes.)
The artist
7. (The people are living near my house. They are very friendly.)
The people
8. (The children are playing in the garden. They behave very well.)
The children
9. (The doctor is treating my grandmother. She is very kind.)
The doctor
10. (The teacher is teaching us Literature. She has written several books.)
The teacher

EXERCISE 1: Combine each pair of the following sentences using the past participle (Verb + ed). (Hãy kết hợp mỗi cặp câu sau bằng cách dùng quá khứ phân từ.)

Example: (The toy is kept in that box. It is made in Vietnam.)

The toy *kept in that box is made in Vietnam.*

1. (The books are written by this author. They are all best-sellers.)
The books
2. (The movies are made by Director Steven. They have won some awards.)
The movies
3. (The men were arrested by the police. They robbed a bank last week.)
The men
4. (The goods are produced by this company. They are of high quality.)
The goods
5. (The movie theater is situated near my house. It often shows good movies.)
The movie theater
6. (The suspension bridges are built by local engineers. They are as good as those built by foreign engineers.)
The suspension bridges
7. (The furniture is made by this shop. It is sold on overseas markets.)
The furniture

8. (The boy was rewarded by the committee. He has carried his disabled friend on his back to school for years.)

The boy

9. (The pictures are taken by that photographer. They have won some international competitions.)

The pictures

10. (The automobiles are assembled in the country. They are as good as the imported ones.)

The automobiles

EXERCISE 3: Combine each pair of the following sentences using the present participle or the past participle. (Hãy kết hợp mỗi cặp câu sau bằng cách dùng hiện tại phân từ hoặc quá khứ phân từ.)

Examples: (The man is reading the paper. He works in my office.)

The man *reading the paper* works in my office.

(The man is offered the job. He is well-qualified.)

The man *offered the job* is well-qualified.

1. (The woman lives on the third floor. She works for a publishing house.)

The woman

2. (The songs are composed by this songwriter. They are very popular.)

The songs

3. (The hotel is located near the beach. It has good service.)

The hotel

4. (The writer wins the this year's Literature Award. She is only 21 years old.)

The writer

5. (The machine was invented by this young student. It is very useful.)

The machine

6. (The people are going on holiday with me. They are very kind and helpful.)

The people

7. (The man is nominated for 'The Writer of the Year'. He used to be a clown.)

The man

8. (The bridges are built by students in the Green Summer Program. They are of great help.)

The bridges

9. (The secretaries are working in this office. They can speak English well.)

The secretaries

10. (The waiter is serving us. He is very polite.)

The waiter

EXERCISE 4: Read the situations and make requests with 'Would you mind if ... ?' or 'Do you mind if ... ?'. (Hãy đọc tình huống rồi đặt câu yêu cầu với 'Would you mind if ... ?' hoặc 'Do you mind if ... ?')

1. You are in the theater and you want to take a seat. You say to the other person:
Do you mind if I sit here?
2. You are at someone's house and you want to use his telephone. You say to him:
Would you mind if _____
3. You want to borrow this book. You say to the owner of the book:
Would you mind if _____
4. You want to stay for a few days at your friend's house. You say to him:
Do you mind if _____
5. You want to have a look at your friend's photo album. You say to her:
Would you mind if _____
6. You want to ask the teacher some questions. You say to her:
Would you mind if _____
7. You want to turn on the radio. You say to your roommate:
Do you mind if _____
8. You want to use your friend's computer for a while. You say to him:
Do you mind if _____
9. You want to read someone's magazine. You say to him:
Would you mind if _____
10. You want to use your friend's toilet. You say to her:
Do you mind if _____

EXERCISE 5: Read the situations and make requests with 'Would you mind + V-ing?' or 'Do you mind + V-ing?'. (Hãy đọc tình huống rồi đặt câu yêu cầu với 'Would you mind + V-ing?' hoặc 'Do you mind + V-ing?')

1. You want someone to wait for you for a minute. You say to him:
Would you mind waiting for me for a minute?
2. You want someone to listen to what you are saying. You say to her:
Would you mind _____
3. You do not want your friends to talk so loudly. You say to them:
Do you mind _____
4. You want someone to repeat his question. You say to him:
Do you mind _____
5. You want someone to sign her name in the petition. You say to her:
Would you mind _____

6. You want someone to turn off the TV. You say to him:
Do you mind
7. You do not want your friend to use your computer. You say to him:
Would you mind
8. You want your teacher to explain something more clearly. You say to her:
Would you mind
9. You want your friend to put his things in the right places. You say to him:
Do you mind
10. You do not want your roommate to throw his things on the floor. You say to him:
Do you mind

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

- A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. The boy _____ beside Hung is his cousin.
A. walks B. walking C. he walks D. walk
2. Would you mind if _____ this chair away?
A. take B. taking C. I take D. I took
3. The copies _____ from this machine are not very clear.
A. print B. printing C. printed D. are printed
4. Would you mind _____ me some more coffee?
A. to get B. getting C. you get D. you getting
5. The letters _____ by your secretary are full of mistakes.
A. typing B. typed C. are typed D. they are typed
6. Do you mind _____ calling me at night anymore?
A. not call B. not to call C. not calling D. you don't call
7. The waitress _____ us last night was very rude.
A. serves B. served C. serving D. she served
8. Do you mind if _____ the information to you by e-mail?
A. I send B. I sent C. me sending D. sending
9. She gave him a small box _____ in brown paper.
A. wrapped B. wrapping C. it wraps D. it is wrapped
10. I really like the friend _____ in front of me in class.
A. sitting B. sit C. sits D. he sits

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. I'm doing my work, so do you mind turn down the TV?

A B C D

2. The pictures painting by these children will be exhibited this month.

A B C D

3. 'Would you mind if I search your handbag, Madame?' said the customs officer.

A B C D

4. When she finished reading the letter, she put it in a book covering in

A B C D

flowery paper.

5. Can you tell me the name of the boy stands beside you in this photo?

A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
accommodation: chỗ ở	accommodate: cung cấp chỗ ở		
center / centre: trung tâm		central: thuộc về hoặc ở trung tâm	centrally: ở trung tâm
fortune: vận may		- fortunate: may mắn - unfortunate: không may mắn	- fortunately: may mắn - unfortunately: không may
information: thông tin	inform: báo cho biết	informative: nhiều thông tin	
magnificence: sự hoành tráng		magnificent: hoành tráng	magnificently: hoành tráng
- mountain: núi - mountaineer: người leo núi - mountaineering: môn leo núi		mountainous: có nhiều núi	

- photo / photograph: bức ảnh chụp	photograph: chụp ảnh	photogenic: (người) ăn ảnh	
- photography: ngành nhiếp ảnh			
- photographer: người chụp ảnh			

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

- We had a four-day vacation in that coastal town. _____ , it rained hard almost every day. (fortunate)
- You can get all _____ you need on the Internet. (inform)
- That region in the North of the country is very _____. (mountain)
- 'Does the price of the holiday include _____ ?' I asked the tourist officer. (accommodate)
- I was amazed by the _____ of the scenery. (magnificent)
- The hotel is located in the _____ district of the city. (center)
- My hobbies are traveling and _____. (photo)
- He was _____ in having some good friends to help him. (fortune)
- The new hotel can _____ 600 guests at a time. (accommodation)
- The table was placed _____ with six nice chairs around. (center)
- This dictionary is a little too expensive for me, but it is extremely _____. (inform)
- I think you are very _____. You look very nice in these photos. (photo)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

daily (adj / adv)	: hàng ngày
destination (n)	: nơi đến
finally (adv)	: cuối cùng
low-priced (adj)	: có giá thấp
offshore (adj)	: ở ngoài khơi (gần bờ biển)
on the left (adv)	: phía bên trái
recognize (v)	: nhận ra
seat (n)	: chỗ ngồi

1. 'Could you please tell me the way to the post office?' 'Turn right at the intersection, and it's _____.'
2. This photo is so blurred that I cannot _____ anyone in it.
3. 'Is there any _____ left on the next flight to Hanoi?' I asked the clerk.
4. Traveling around the town is a part of my _____ life.
5. This shop has lots of _____ goods for to choose from.
6. This place will be developed into a tourist _____.
7. They _____ decided to get married after having known each other for three years.
8. From the beach, there is a magnificent view of the bay and the _____ islands.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. problem | B. photo | C. prefer | D. luggage |
| 2. A. buffalo | B. finally | C. exciting | D. interest |
| 3. A. museum | B. history | C. restaurant | D. tourism |
| 4. A. botanical | B. expression | C. vegetarian | D. suggesting |
| 5. A. institute | B. departure | C. beautiful | D. various |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|---|
| 1. A. e <u>t</u> ernal | B. h <u>e</u> ritage | C. r <u>e</u> cognize | D. r <u>e</u> volution |
| 2. A. m <u>i</u> nd | B. d <u>r</u> iver | C. r <u>i</u> ver | D. r <u>i</u> ce |
| 3. A. p <u>a</u> goda | B. c <u>a</u> ve | C. d <u>a</u> ily | D. r <u>a</u> ilway |
| 4. A. s <u>u</u> gar | B. s <u>e</u> ntence | C. c <u>e</u> nter | D. s <u>i</u> ttng |
| 5. A. g <u>i</u> ant | B. t <u>r</u> ibal | C. i <u>s</u> land | D. m <u>a</u> gn <u>i</u> f <u>i</u> cent |

Unit

12

A VACATION ABROAD

(Kì nghỉ ở nước ngoài)

VOCABULARY

- abroad [ə'brɔ:rd] (adv) : ở nước ngoài

Ví dụ: I haven't heard of Tam since he went to study abroad.

(Tôi không nghe tin tức của Tâm kể từ khi anh ấy đi học ở nước ngoài.)

- appropriate [ə'prɒpɪət] (adj) : thích hợp

Ví dụ: Jeans are not appropriate for old people.

(Quần bò thì không thích hợp với người già.)

- bay [beɪ] (n) : vịnh

- carve [kɑ:rv] (v) : chạm; khắc

Ví dụ: Some people have carved their names on the tree trunks in the park.

(Một vài người đã khắc tên của họ lên những thân cây trong công viên.)

- complain (about) [kəm'pleɪn] (v) : phàn nàn; than phiền

- complaint [kəm'pleɪnt] (n) : lời phàn nàn; lời than phiền

Ví dụ: They have received hundreds of complaints from the viewers about the program.

(Họ đã nhận được hàng trăm lời than phiền của khán giả về chương trình đó.)

- gym [dʒɪm] (n) : phòng tập thể dục = gymnasium [dʒɪm'neɪzɪəm]

- lava ['lɑ:və] (n) : nham thạch

- pick up ['pɪk ʌp] (v) : đến đón ai (bằng xe)

Ví dụ: Both the husband and the wife take turns to pick up the children after school.

(Cả hai vợ chồng thay phiên nhau đến đón bọn nhỏ sau giờ học ở trường.)

- pour [pɔ:r] (v) : rót ra; tuôn ra

- prison ['prɪzn] (n) : nhà tù

Ví dụ: He was sent to prison for a crime that he didn't commit.

(Anh ta bị tống vào tù vì một cái tội mà anh ta không phạm.)

- schedule ['skedʒu:l] (n) : thời gian biểu; lịch trình

Ví dụ: Despite some difficulties, the project is still going on schedule.

(Mặc dầu có một vài khó khăn nhưng dự án vẫn đang diễn tiến theo lịch trình.)

- shore [ʃɔ:r] (n) : bờ biển; bờ hồ

- sightseeing ['saɪtsi:ɪŋ] (n) : việc đi ngắm cảnh

Ví dụ: I always go sightseeing whenever I am in a different town.

(Tôi luôn luôn đi ngắm cảnh mỗi khi tôi đến một thành phố khác.)

- situated ['sitʃu:ɪtɪd] (adj) : tọa lạc; nằm ở vị trí
Ví dụ: Their school is situated in a quiet neighborhood of the town.
(Ngôi trường tọa lạc tại một khu phố yên tĩnh của thành phố.)
- souvenir ['su:vənɪr] (n) : quà lưu niệm
- statue ['stætʃu:] (n) : bức tượng
- the Statue of Liberty ['stætʃu: əv 'lɪbərti] (n): tượng Nữ thần tự do ở New York
- valley ['væli] (n) : thung lũng
- volcano [və:l'keɪnəʊ] (n) : núi lửa
- wharf [wa:rʃ] (n) : cầu tàu; bến đỗ của tàu, thuyền

GRAMMAR

1/ Past progressive

2/ Present progressive with *always*

1/ Past progressive (Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn)

I/ Hình thức :

* **Câu khẳng định - Affirmative:**

I		
He	was	
She		working
It		playing
We		learning
You	were	
They		

* **Câu phủ định - Negative:**

I		
He	wasn't	
She	was not	working
It		playing
We		learning
You	weren't	
They	were not	

*** Câu hỏi – Question:**

Was	I he she It	working? playing? learning?
Were	we you they	

II/ Cách dùng:

1/ Chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn để diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ. Ví dụ:

- 'What were you doing at 8 o'clock last night?' 'I was watching TV.'

(*'Bạn đang làm gì lúc 8 giờ tối qua?' 'Tôi đang xem TV.'*)

- Now, I'm sitting in class. At this time last week, I was going on vacation with my family.

(*Bây giờ tôi đang ngồi trong lớp. Vào thời điểm này tuần trước, tôi đang đi nghỉ mát với gia đình.*)

2/ Chúng ta cũng dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn để diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra trong quá khứ thì một hành động khác cũng xuất hiện. Chúng ta thường dùng 'when' hoặc 'while' để nối hai mệnh đề. Ví dụ:

- I was watching TV when suddenly there was a power cut.

(*Tôi đang xem TV thì bất ngờ bị cúp điện.*)

- He fell ill while he was going on vacation.

(*Ông ấy ngã bệnh trong khi đang đi nghỉ mát.*)

2/ Present progressive with *always*

(Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với *always*)

Chúng ta có thể dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với trạng từ '*always*' để diễn tả lời phàn nàn hoặc sự bức mình đối với người khác hoặc đối với bản thân. Ví dụ:

- I can't stand my roommate anymore. He's *always* throwing his dirty clothes on the floor.

(*Tôi không chịu nổi người bạn cùng phòng nữa rồi. Anh ta cứ ném quần áo bẩn khắp trên sàn nhà.*)

- Oh, no! I've lost my key. I'm *always* losing things!

(*Ôi, thôi rồi! Tôi lại mất chìa khóa. Tôi cứ luôn đánh mất vật dụng!*)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Put the verbs in parentheses in the past progressive tense. (Hãy viết các động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ tiếp diễn.)

1. Everyone was sleeping (sleep) when I came home last night.
2. They _____ (have) dinner in a restaurant when the police came and arrested them.
3. She _____ (work) in Chicago when she met her present husband.
4. The accident happened while they _____ (drive) home from work.
5. The taxi _____ (travel) at high speed when it hit the lamp post.
6. We heard the news while we _____ (eat) breakfast in a restaurant.
7. She _____ (take) a shower when the telephoned rang.
8. The boy fell while he _____ (climb) a tree.
9. He returned home while his wife and his daughter _____ (prepare) the dinner.
10. She got a cramp in her leg while she _____ (swim) in the sea.

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with the past progressive of one of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng cách dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn của một trong các động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>walk</i>	<i>cook</i>	<i>talk</i>	<i>sleep</i>	<i>sing</i>
<i>rain</i>	<i>cross</i>	<i>watch</i>	<i>stand</i>	<i>play</i>

1. While we were talking on the phone, the power went out.
2. I _____ a movie on TV last night when my friend called.
3. When she woke up in the morning, the birds _____ outside.
4. My son broke his glasses while he _____ soccer.
5. While Mrs. Turner _____ dinner, she burned her finger.
6. We _____ soundly in our bedroom when the fire broke out.
7. When I saw Jane, she _____ alone at the bus stop.
8. It _____ heavily when we left the party.
9. Someone attacked Mrs. White while she _____ down the street last night.
10. The bridge suddenly broke in half while a heavy truck _____ it.

EXERCISE 3: Put the verbs in parentheses in the past simple or the past progressive as required by the meaning. (Hãy viết các động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ đơn hoặc thì quá khứ tiếp diễn tùy theo ý nghĩa của mỗi câu.)

1. I watched (watch) a soccer game on TV last night.
2. I was watching (watch) a soccer game on TV when my friend called.
3. They _____ (travel) to Italy by ship.
4. They _____ (travel) to Italy by ship when there was a storm.
5. We _____ (drive) to an amusement park when we met our friends on the way.
6. We _____ (drive) to an amusement park last Sunday.
7. While Tina _____ (have) lunch in a cafeteria, her boss came in and sat at the same table.
8. Tina _____ (have) lunch in a cafeteria yesterday.
9. Greg _____ (come) to work by bus this morning.
10. Greg made a phone call while he _____ (come) to work this morning.

EXERCISE 4: Put the verbs in parentheses in the past simple or the past progressive. (Hãy viết các động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ đơn hoặc thì quá khứ tiếp diễn.)

1. Sheila was taking (take) a shower when the lights suddenly went out (go out).
2. While I _____ (walk) down the street, I _____ (find) some money on the sidewalk.
3. Brian _____ (sing) his favorite song in the shower when he _____ (hear) the phone ring.
4. I _____ (see) Nam at the student cafeteria yesterday while he _____ (talk) with some friends.
5. It _____ (start) to rain heavily while Lan and I _____ (go) to school this morning.
6. Sandra _____ (climb) the stairs when the doorbell _____ (ring).
7. While my father _____ (watch) a basketball game on television, he _____ (fall) asleep.
8. While Ingrid _____ (wash) dishes yesterday, she _____ (drop) a plate and _____ (break) it.
9. The car _____ (break down) while they _____ (drive) to the next town.
10. While Mr. Lam _____ (stand) under a mango tree yesterday, a mango _____ (fall) and _____ (hit) him on the head.

EXERCISE 5: Put the verbs in parentheses in the present progressive with 'always' to express complaints or annoyance. (Hãy viết động từ trong ngoặc ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với 'always' để diễn tả lời phàn nàn hoặc sự bức mình.)

1. I've lost my key again. I am always losing (lose) my things!
2. Oh, no! The lights have gone out! The lights _____ (go out) while we're having dinner!
3. You made a mistake again! You _____ (make) the same mistake!
4. Please, close the door when you go out! You _____ (leave) the door open!
5. Please, cook something different from fish! You _____ (cook) fish for us!
6. Can you stop listening to that noisy music for a while? You _____ (play) your CDs so loudly!
7. I forgot to bring that book for you! I _____ (forget) to do everything!
8. Look! Steve is drunk again! He _____ (drink) too much beer at parties!

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. The ferry sank while it _____ the Channel.
A. crosses B. is crossing C. was crossing D. has crossed
2. The thief _____ into the house while everyone was asleep.
A. breaks B. broke C. has broken D. is breaking
3. Hoa _____ for the bus when she saw the accident.
A. is waiting B. waited C. has waited D. was waiting
4. Mr. Baker _____ off his bike while he was riding to the office.
A. fell B. was falling C. is falling D. falls
5. Nam was punished by the teacher again! He _____ to do his homework!
A. always forgetting B. have always forgotten
C. were always forgetting D. is always forgetting
6. This time yesterday, I _____ in the library.
A. study B. am studying
C. was studying D. have studied
7. She _____ the report when the boss came in.
A. types B. is typing C. was typing D. was typed

8. We _____ the victim first-aid when the ambulance arrived.
 A. are giving B. have given C. gave D. were giving
9. Someone _____ the police while the robbers were attacking the store.
 A. called B. calls C. is calling D. has called
10. The phone _____ while I'm concentrating on my work!
 A. is always ringing B. has always ringing
 C. is always rung D. was always ringing

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. The sun is shining brightly when I got up this morning.
 A B C D
2. While Pam was getting out of the taxi, she slipped and break her leg.
 A B C D
3. When I came home from work yesterday evening, I was taking a bath.
 A B C D
4. I saw your father this morning. He is exercising in the park then.
 A B C D
5. People aren't liking Marge because she is always complaining about anything.
 A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
arrival: sự đến; lúc đến	arrive: đến tại		
departure: sự khởi hành	depart: khởi hành; ra đi	departed: đã quá cố	
fame: danh tiếng		famous: nổi tiếng	famously: nổi tiếng

- gym = gymnasium: phòng tập thể dục - gymnast: vận động viên thể dục - gymnastics: môn thể dục		gymnastic: thuộc về thể dục	
rain: cơn mưa; nước mưa	rain: mưa	rainy: có mưa	
snow: tuyết	snow: tuyết rơi	snowy: có tuyết	
surprise: sự ngạc nhiên	surprise: làm ngạc nhiên	- surprised: bị ngạc nhiên - surprising: gây ngạc nhiên	surprisingly: đáng ngạc nhiên
warmth: hơi ấm	warm (up): khởi động; làm nóng	warm: ấm áp; niềm nở	Warmly: niềm nở

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active. (act)

- It is _____ that your European friends can easily eat with chopsticks. (surprise)
- She seemed never to forget her _____ husband for the rest of her life. (depart)
- She could feel the _____ of the child's hand in her own. (warm)
- I prefer the dry season to the _____ season because I don't like very wet weather. (rain)
- The children were _____ well behaved all that morning. (surprise)
- Many people go into the film industry to look for _____ and fortune. (famous)
- We have had no news from him since his _____ from the town. (depart)
- A computer screen shows the _____ and departure times of the planes. (arrive)
- Our team won most of the medals in the _____ events. (gymnast)
- He traveled across the _____ fields by sleigh. (snow)
- I was almost _____ at her early arrival. (surprise)
- She greeted all the guests _____ when they arrived. (warm)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

carve (v)	: khắc chạm
included (p.p.)	: được bao gồm
medical school (n)	: trường y khoa
prison (n)	: nhà tù
souvenirs (n)	: quà lưu niệm
situated (p.p.)	: tọa lạc; nằm ở
Statue of Liberty (n)	: tượng Nữ thần tự do
volcano (n)	: núi lửa

1. Did you buy a lot of _____ on your last vacation?
2. The _____ was a gift from French people to Americans in 1884.
3. The man was sent to _____ for his bank robbery.
4. The hotel was _____ near the beach, so we could walk to the sea every morning.
5. He taught himself to _____ in both stone and wood.
6. Many tourists come to the _____ island of Oahu in Hawaii to see the _____ of Kilauea.
7. My sister wants to become a dentist, so she's trying to pass the entrance examination to the _____.
8. We didn't need to give a tip because service was _____ in the bill.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

1. A. Britain B. Japan C. Canada D. England
2. A. visit B. follow C. include D. ticket
3. A. wonderful B. expensive C. delicious D. convenient
4. A. degree B. seafood C. humid D. minus
5. A. liberty B. centigrade C. business D. volcano

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. w <u>i</u> ndy | B. m <u>i</u> nus | C. w <u>i</u> ne | D. fl <u>i</u> ght |
| 2. A. l <u>o</u> ve | B. o <u>o</u> ver | C. c <u>o</u> ver | D. d <u>o</u> zen |
| 3. A. d <u>e</u> ar | B. h <u>e</u> ar | C. n <u>e</u> ar | D. b <u>e</u> ar |
| 4. A. g <u>o</u> al | B. g <u>y</u> m | C. g <u>i</u> rl | D. g <u>o</u> ne |
| 5. A. m <u>e</u> dical | B. c <u>e</u> nter | C. d <u>e</u> licious | D. p <u>r</u> esident |

PROGRESS TEST 6

(Unit 11 and Unit 12)

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

- "Would you mind if I put my bag here?" "_____".
A. Not at all. B. No, I would.
C. Yes, you would. D. You're welcome.
- I wouldn't mind him _____ home late, if he didn't make so much noise.
A. come B. coming C. came D. to come
- In this photo, the man _____ next to my father is my uncle.
A. stands B. standing C. stood D. to stand
- 'Bánh chưng' is a Vietnamese traditional cake _____ in banana leaves.
A. wrapped B. wrapping C. to wrap D. wraps
- She is very upset because he is _____ forgetting to leave his dirty shoes out of the door.
A. never B. rarely C. hardly D. always
- I ate an hamburger _____ I was waiting at the bus stop.
A. since B. where C. while D. until
- Chicago _____ on the shore of Lake Michigan.
A. is stood B. is discovered C. is situated D. is sitting
- Mount Rushmore is the place where the heads of four American presidents are _____ into the rock.
A. painting B. written C. putting D. carved

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. We took a lot of photos while we _____ around the United States. (travel)
2. Would you mind _____ the window? It's too hot in here! (open)
3. It is very expensive _____ a vacation on a luxury cruise ship. (take)
4. My friend Paul left the town last year and we _____ email to each other since then. (send)

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. It was an _____ trip. Everyone enjoyed it. (excite)
2. They stayed at a _____ resort which overlooked a beautiful lake. (mountain)
3. We went on a lot of _____ tours when we visited different cities. (sightsee)
4. It was a great vacation. The food was good and the _____ was excellent. (accommodate)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box. There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

<i>musician</i>	<i>population</i>	<i>group</i>	<i>century</i>	<i>city</i>
-----------------	-------------------	--------------	----------------	-------------

Liverpool is Britain's second biggest port, after London. It stands on the banks of the River Mersey in northwest England. It is an important passenger port for travel to Ireland, and many Irish immigrants live there. It has a (1) _____ of 448,300.

King John named Liverpool in 1207. The city grew bigger in the 18th (2) _____, when it became an important center for trading sugar, spices, and slaves between Africa, Britain, the Americas, and the West Indies.

Liverpool's most famous musicians are the Beatles. In the 1960s this British rock (3) _____ was popular all over the world. They had 30 top ten hits. They were all born in Liverpool and started the group there in 1959. They first played at a night club called the Cavern and then traveled the world. One of them, Paul McCartney, is now the richest (4) _____ in the world. Many tourists visit Liverpool to see the homes of the Beatles.

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

History of Travel

Most people enjoy taking a vacation. Some people travel within their own country, while others go abroad. But traveling for pleasure is a relatively new idea. Thomas Cook arranged the world's first tour in 1841. The first tour was for 570 people who traveled only 11 miles. Over the following years he planned tours to Europe, Egypt and the United States. His tours were popular, and helped him to create one of the world's oldest and largest travel companies, originally called Thomas Cook and Son.

Since the invention of the airplane, traveling is cheaper, faster, and more convenient than ever. Millions of people enjoy it each year. Not all travelers use airplanes or trains, though. Some people travel by cruise ship. A cruise ship is a very large and luxurious ship that is like a floating five-star hotel. Cruise passengers enjoy comfortable rooms and fancy restaurants. Cruises stop in many different cities worldwide, but the most popular destinations are Southern Europe, Alaska and the Caribbean.

1. Thomas Cook arranged tours of Europe, Asia, and the United States.
2. The world's first tour was organized in 1841 by Thomas Cook.
3. Thomas Cook and Son was the oldest travel company in the world.
4. Cruise ships can stop only in some cities in the world.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. The woman is sitting at the first desk. She is the secretary.

The woman sitting

2. The products are of high quality. They are made by this company.

The products made

3. The telephone rang during my dinner.

The telephone rang while I

4. It is his bad habit to leave the door open after coming in.

He is

Unit

13

FESTIVALS

(Các lễ hội)

VOCABULARY

- ancient [ˈeɪʃnt] (adj) : cổ xưa
- award [əˈwɔːrd] (n) : giải thưởng; (v) trao giải thưởng
Ví dụ: They were very proud as they watched their daughter receive the award.
(Họ rất hãnh diện khi nhìn thấy con gái nhận giải thưởng.)
- bamboo [ˌbæmˈbuː] (n) : cây tre
- based on [ˈbeɪst ɒn] (adj) : dựa trên
Ví dụ: The movie is based on a novel written by Jack London.
(Bộ phim dựa trên một cuốn tiểu thuyết của nhà văn Jack London.)
- Christmas carol [ˈkrɪsməs ˈkærəl] (n) : ca khúc lễ Giáng sinh
- compete [kəmˈpiːt] (v) : thi đấu
Ví dụ: Tan is going to compete in the Independence Day Cycling Race this year.
(Tân sẽ thi đấu trong cuộc đua xe đạp Ngày Lễ Độc lập năm nay.)
- competition [ˌkɑːmpəˈtɪʃn] (n) : cuộc thi
- competitor [kəmˈpetɪtər] (n) : người dự thi
- contest [ˈkɑːntest] (n) : cuộc thi
- council [ˈkaʊnsəl] (n) : hội đồng
- custom [ˈkʌstəm] (n) : phong tục
Ví dụ: What customs do you have for New Year in your country?
(Các bạn có những phong tục nào cho ngày đầu năm ở đất nước các bạn?)
- description [dɪˈskrɪpʃn] (n) : sự mô tả
- eve [iːv] (n) : ngày hoặc đêm áp lễ
- grand [grænd] (adj) : lớn; quan trọng
Ví dụ: Present on this grand occasion were Angelina Jolie, Tom Cruise and other such stars.
(Hiện diện nhân sự kiện quan trọng này là Angelina Jolie, Tom Cruise và các ngôi sao khác.)
- husk [hʌsk] (n) : vỏ trấu
- judge [dʒʌdʒ] (n) : giám khảo; quan tòa
- keen (on) [kiːn] (adj) : say mê; yêu thích
Ví dụ: My grandfather is keen on cycling in the countryside.
(Ông tôi rất yêu thích đi xe đạp ở vùng thôn quê.)

- leader ['li:dər] (n) : lãnh đạo

- participate (in) [pɑ:r'tɪsɪpeɪt] (v) : tham gia

Ví dụ: The students are urged to participate in all of the school activities.

(Các học sinh được thúc giục tham gia vào tất cả các sinh hoạt của nhà trường.)

- patron saint ['peɪtrən seɪnt] (n) : thánh bổn mạng

- poem ['pouəm] (n) : bài thơ

- pomegranate ['pɒ:mɪgrænɪt] (n) : quả lựu

- position [pə'zɪʃn] (n) : vị trí

- pottery ['pɑ:təri] (n) : đồ gốm

- prize [praɪz] (n) : giải thưởng

- rub [rʌb] (v) : chà xát

Ví dụ: He rubbed his hands with the delight in winning the contest.

(Anh ta xoa hai tay vào nhau với niềm vui chiến thắng cuộc thi.)

- separate ['sepəreɪt] (v) : chia ra; tách ra

- spread – spread – spread [spred] (v) : lan tỏa

Ví dụ: His confidence quickly spread among his friends in class.

(Sự tự tin của anh ấy đã nhanh chóng lan tỏa trong các bạn cùng lớp.)

- urge [ɜ:rdʒ] (v) : thúc giục

Ví dụ: The members of his family urged him to enter for the singing competition on TV.

(Các thành viên gia đình thúc giục ông ấy tham gia cuộc thi hát trên truyền hình.)

- yell [jel] (v) : la hét

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

GRAMMAR

1/ Passive voice (2)

2/ Reported speech

3/ Compound words: *rice-cooking, fire-making, etc.*

1/ Passive voice (2)

(Câu bị động – Phần 2)

Trong bài này, chúng ta tiếp tục khảo sát câu bị động với các thì quá khứ đơn, hiện tại hoàn thành và các động từ khiếm khuyết (= modals). Sau đây là bảng đối chiếu cách biến đổi hình thức động từ từ câu chủ động (= active) sang câu bị động (= passive). (Hãy xem lại phần Grammar trong Unit 10 của sách này để ôn lại cấu trúc và những điểm căn bản của câu bị động.)

1/ Câu bị động với thì quá khứ đơn: ‘was / were + past participle’

Active: Someone broke the window last night.

Passive: The window *was broken* last night.

Active: The students decorated the classroom.

Passive: The classroom *was decorated* by the students.

2/ Câu bị động với thì hiện tại hoàn thành: ‘have/has + been + past participle’

Active: Someone has eaten the pie.

Passive: The pie *has been eaten*.

Active: The students have decorated the classroom.

Passive: The classroom *has been decorated* by the students.

3/ Câu bị động với các động từ khiếm khuyết:

‘can/must/may + be + past participle’

Active: Someone $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{can} \\ \text{must} \\ \text{may} \end{array} \right\}$ sing the carols.

Passive: The carols $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{can} \\ \text{must} \\ \text{may} \end{array} \right\}$ *be sung*.

Active: The students $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{can} \\ \text{must} \\ \text{may} \end{array} \right\}$ perform the carols.

Passive: The carols $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{can} \\ \text{must} \\ \text{may} \end{array} \right\}$ *be performed* by the students.

2/ Reported speech

(Câu tường thuật)

- Khi nhắc lại câu nói của một người nào đó cho một người khác nghe, chúng ta dùng câu tường thuật, tiếng Anh gọi là ‘*Reported speech*’; câu nguyên văn mà chúng ta muốn nói lại gọi là câu trực tiếp ‘*Direct speech*’. Ví dụ:

Direct speech: “I’m pleased to meet you,” he said.

Reported speech: He said (that) he was pleased to meet me.

- Trong câu trực tiếp (Direct speech), chúng ta dùng dấu ngoặc kép : "...". Khi đổi câu trực tiếp sang câu tường thuật, chúng ta bỏ dấu ngoặc kép và chú ý những điểm sau:

1/ Mở đầu câu tường thuật bằng: *He said (that), She said (that), ...* ; hoặc *'He told me (that), She told me (that), ...*

2/ Thay đổi các đại từ nhân xưng. Ví dụ:

Direct speech		Reported speech
I	đổi thành	He / She
me		him / her
my		his / her
We		They
us		them
our		their
You		I / We
you		me / us
your		my / our

3/ Thay đổi thì và hình thức của động từ. (Xem bảng đối chiếu bên dưới)

4/ Thay đổi các từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn (nếu có). (Xem bảng đối chiếu bên dưới)

- Bảng đối chiếu hình thức động từ trong câu trực tiếp và câu tường thuật:**

Direct speech	Reported speech
<i>Present simple</i> "I like festivals," Susan said.	<i>Past simple</i> Susan said she liked festivals.
<i>Past simple</i> "I enjoyed the trip," Peter said.	<i>Past perfect</i> Peter said he had enjoyed the trip.
<i>Present perfect</i> "We've seen some festivals," he said.	<i>Past perfect</i> He said they had seen some festivals.
<i>Future simple: 'will'</i> "We'll miss you," she said.	<i>'would'</i> She said they would miss us.
<i>Modals: 'can / may'</i> "I can / may return soon," he said.	<i>'could / might'</i> He said he could / might return soon.
<i>Modals: 'should / must'</i> "You should / must phone me," she said.	<i>'should / must'</i> She said I should / must phone her.

CHÚ Ý: Khi câu trực tiếp dùng ‘*must*’, thì trong câu tường thuật có thể giữ nguyên ‘*must*’ hoặc đổi thành ‘*had to*’. Ví dụ:

Direct speech: “You must take a rest,” Lan said.

Reported speech: Lan said I

{	must had to	}
---	----------------	---

 take a rest.

- **Bảng đối chiếu cách thay đổi các từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn từ câu trực tiếp sang câu tường thuật:**

Direct speech		Reported speech
today	<i>đổi thành</i>	that day
now		then, at that time
tomorrow		the next day, the following day
yesterday		the day before, the previous day
two days ago		two days before
next week		the next week, the following week
last month		the month before, the previous month
here		there
this / these		that / those

3/ Compound words: *rice-cooking, fire-making, etc.*

(Một số từ ghép như: *rice-cooking, fire-making, ...*)

Các loại từ ghép trong tiếng Anh khá đa dạng: người ta có thể ghép ‘*danh từ + danh từ*’, ‘*trạng từ + tính từ*’, Riêng trong bài học này, chúng ta chỉ khảo sát các từ ghép với công thức: ‘*danh từ + V-ing*’; loại từ ghép này thường được dùng như danh từ hoặc tính từ, và có thể dùng dấu nối ở giữa hoặc không. Sau đây là một số từ ghép thông dụng thuộc loại này:

Từ ghép : ‘Noun + V-ing’	Ý nghĩa
rice-cooking	việc nấu cơm
fire-making	việc nhóm bếp
bull-fighting	môn đấu bò
car making	việc chế tạo xe ô-tô
flower arranging	việc cắm hoa
rice exporting	việc xuất khẩu gạo
family planning	việc kế hoạch hóa gia đình
town planning	việc quy hoạch đô thị
oil painting	(nghệ thuật) tranh sơn dầu

Ví dụ:

- Some people think *bullfighting* is a violent entertainment.
(Một số người cho rằng đấu bò là một môn giải trí thô bạo.)
- Most of the participants in the *flower arranging* competition are women.
(Hầu hết những người tham dự cuộc thi cắm hoa là phụ nữ.)
- Viet Nam is one of the biggest *rice exporting* countries.
(Việt Nam là một trong những nước xuất khẩu lúa gạo lớn nhất.)
- This artist is famous for his *oil painting*.
(Họa sĩ này nổi tiếng về nghệ thuật tranh sơn dầu.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the passive of the verbs. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng hình thức bị động thích hợp của các động từ.)

1. They have planted many trees in the park.
Many trees have been planted in the park.
2. The police caught the criminal yesterday.
The criminal was caught by the police yesterday.
3. Our school team won the final game.
The final game was won by our school team.
4. Dr. Ba will treat the patient.
The patient will be treated by Dr. Ba.
5. Millions of tourists have visited our country this year.
Our country has been visited by millions of tourists this year.
6. They will play the championship game at Wembley next week.
The championship game will be played at Wembley next week.
7. The children may eat all the candy.
All the candy may be eaten by the children.
8. Someone must take this old table away today.
This old table must be taken away today.
9. Millions of people have seen Steven Spielberg's *Jurassic Park*.
Steven Spielberg's *Jurassic Park* has been seen by millions of people.
10. Farmers have grown rice in this region since ancient times.
Rice has been grown by farmers in this region since ancient times.

EXERCISE 2: Change the active sentences to active sentences. (Hãy đổi những câu chủ động sang bị động.)

1. The cat chased the mouse.

The mouse was chased by the cat.

2. Big fish often eat small fish.

Small fish

3. They will inform you of the test results next week.

You

4. The earthquake destroyed most of the houses in the village.

Most of the houses in the village

5. Millions of people have read Mark Twain's books.

Mark Twain's books

6. They won't allow you to enter this building.

You

7. Everybody can understand the meaning of a smile.

The meaning of a smile

8. Conservationists have saved elephants from extinction.

Elephants

9. Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids along the Nile.

The pyramids

10. People have worn perfume since ancient times.

Perfume

EXERCISE 3: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb. (Hãy hoàn thành câu bằng hình thức thích hợp của động từ.)

1. "I don't know the way to the hotel," Susan said.

Susan said she didn't know the way to the hotel.

2. "I usually have milk with my breakfast," Tim said.

Tim said he usually _____ milk with his breakfast.

3. "The teacher told me to write a poem," Nga said.

Nga said the teacher _____ her to write a poem.

4. "I've never eaten dog meat," Tom said.

Tom said he _____ dog meat.

5. "You should exercise every morning," Minh told me.

Minh told me I _____ every morning.

6. "You can't tell me what to do," Mai told me.

Mai told me I _____ her what to do.

7. "I lost my wallet on my way to the office," Mr. Phong said.
Mr. Phong said he _____ his wallet on his way to the office.
8. "I must visit my friend at the hospital," Hung said.
Hung said he _____ his friend at the hospital.
9. "My aunt will come to visit us tomorrow," Lan said.
Lan said her aunt _____ to visit them the next day.
10. "I've worked as an engineer for twenty years," Mr. Ba said.
Mr. Ba said he _____ as an engineer for twenty years.

EXERCISE 4: Change the direct speech to the reported speech. (Hãy đổi câu nói trực tiếp sang câu tường thuật.)

1. "I need to borrow a book from the library," Lam told me.
Lam told me *he needed to borrow a book from the library.*
2. "We are planning a surprise party for my sister," Hoa said.
Hoa told me
3. "I will show you my holiday photos," Nam said to me.
Nam said that
4. "I haven't flown on a helicopter yet," Lan said.
Lan told me
5. "I can't lend you any more money," Mai said to Nam.
Mai told Nam that
6. "My bicycle is not as good as yours," Kim told me.
Kim told me
7. "I'm worried about my exams," Binh said.
Binh told me
8. "I don't understand the rules of this game," Hung said.
Hung told me
9. "My computer isn't working," Lan said.
Lan said
10. "I have trouble with my Math lessons," Duc said.
Duc told me

EXERCISE 5: Rewrite the part in italics in each sentence by using the compound '*noun + V-ing*'. (Hãy viết lại phần được in nghiêng trong mỗi câu bằng cách dùng từ ghép '*danh từ + V-ing*'.)

Example: Korea has developed its *industry of making cars* very quickly.

Korea has developed its car making industry very quickly.

1. Many people have actively responded to the *campaign for planning family*.
Many people have actively responded to the _____.
2. Our team won the *contest for making a fire*, but lost the *contest for cooking rice*.
Our team won the _____, but lost the _____.
3. My sister has entered the *competition for arranging flowers* several times, but she hasn't won an award yet.
My sister has entered the _____ several times, but she hasn't won an award yet.
4. O'Keeffe is known today as an *artist painting in oil*, but she also had hundreds of paintings in watercolors.
O'Keeffe is known today as an _____ but she also had hundreds of paintings in watercolors.
5. A grand design of the new town has been proposed by the *officers planning the town*.
A grand design of the new town has been proposed by the _____.

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

- A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. The notice _____ by the principal.
A. signed B. was signed
C. was signing D. has signed
2. The Great Wall of China _____ more than 2,500 years ago.
A. built B. was building
C. was built D. has been built
3. The teacher _____ our papers tomorrow.
A. will correct B. will be corrected
C. is corrected D. has corrected
4. We _____ to the reception by the bride.
A. have been invited B. have been inviting
C. invited D. will be invite
5. Susan's small dog _____ last week.
A. died B. has died C. was died D. will die

- EXERCISE 7:** Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

- 175

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
- competition: kì thi - competitor: người dự thi	compete: thi đua; cạnh tranh	competitive: có tính cạnh tranh	
- contest: cuộc thi - contestant: người dự thi	contest: thi đua		
- decoration: sự trang trí - decorator: chuyên viên trang trí	decorate: trang trí	decorative: để trang trí	
description: sự hoặc bài mô tả	describe: mô tả		
invitation: lời mời; thư mời	invite: mời	inviting: hấp dẫn	invitingly: hấp dẫn
popularity: sự phổ biến		- popular: phổ biến; được yêu chuộng - unpopular: không được yêu chuộng	popularly: phổ biến
	suit: thích hợp với	- suitable: thích hợp - unsuitable: không thích hợp	

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active. (act)

- This singer is quickly winning _____ with teenagers. (popular)
- The piano in her living-room was just _____. She hardly ever played it. (decorate)
- Colin seems _____ for this job. No one can do it better him. (suit)
- Winning the _____ was the great pride of the school. (compete)

5. She gave an exact _____ of her attacker, so the police easily caught him soon afterwards. (describe)
6. His bad temper made him _____ with the students. (popular)
7. Thank you very much for your _____, but I'm afraid I cannot come because I'll be out of town at that time. (invite)
8. Over 300 _____ entered the race last year. (compete)
9. They just finished building their new house, but it still needs a lot of _____ . (decorate)
10. People who stutter are _____ for a teaching career. (suit)
11. The smell of hot coffee was very _____ on such a cold morning. (invite)
12. The soccer player Kiattisak was _____ known as 'Zico of Thailand'. (popular)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

Christmas carols (n)	: ca khúc Giáng sinh
custom (n)	: phong tục
greeting cards (n)	: thiệp chúc mừng
husk (n)	: vỏ trấu
keen on (adj)	: thích thú
rub (v)	: cọ xát
Santa Claus (n)	: Ông già Nô-en
upset (adj)	: buồn rầu; thất vọng

1. My friend Jane is very _____ participating in festivals.
2. In the old times, people used to _____ pieces of bamboo together to make a fire.
3. All of the team seemed very _____ about their failure in the competition.
4. You have to separate the rice from the _____ before you cook it.
5. When did the _____ of decorating the Christmas tree begin?
6. _____ are traditionally exchanged at Christmas and the New Year.
7. Nowadays, _____ are normally sung at Christmas parties in Europe and America.
8. Children in North America believe that _____ will give them presents on Christmas Eve.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. A. ancient | B. explain | C. upset | D. invite |
| 2. A. mountain | B. happen | C. design | D. visit |
| 3. A. festival | B. position | C. pottery | D. separate |
| 4. A. decide | B. product | C. collect | D. bamboo |
| 5. A. perform | B. custom | C. century | D. popular |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kʌm]

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> aint | B. <u>r</u> ain | C. <u>p</u> ainting | D. <u>m</u> ountain |
| 2. A. <u>c</u> arol | B. <u>ch</u> aracter | C. <u>Ch</u> ristmas | D. <u>ch</u> urch |
| 3. A. <u>p</u> oem | B. <u>p</u> ottery | C. <u>p</u> opular | D. <u>r</u> obbery |
| 4. A. <u>th</u> ese | B. <u>th</u> an | C. <u>th</u> ing | D. <u>th</u> eir |
| 5. A. <u>e</u> ver | B. <u>e</u> ve | C. <u>c</u> lever | D. <u>n</u> ever |

Unit

14

WONDERS OF THE WORLD (Những kì quan của thế giới)

VOCABULARY

- attract [ə'trækt] (v) : thu hút; hấp dẫn
- attraction [ə'trækʃn] (n) : sự thu hút; sức hấp dẫn

Ví dụ: The lake is one of the tourist attractions of the town.

(Cái hồ nước là một trong những điểm thu hút du khách của thành phố.)

- Big Ben [bɪg 'ben] (n) : tên tháp chuông ở tòa nhà quốc hội Anh
- citadel ['sɪtədel] (n) : thành trì

- claim [kleɪm] (v) : cho rằng; tự nhận rằng
 Ví dụ: The man claims that he did not cause the accident.
 (Người đàn ông cho rằng ông ta đã không gây ra vụ tai nạn.)
- clue [klu:] (n) : sự gợi ý
 Ví dụ: I can find out the answer if you give me some clues.
 (Tôi có thể tìm ra câu trả lời nếu bạn cho tôi vài gợi ý.)
- compile [kəm'paɪl] (v) : biên soạn
 Ví dụ: It took him three years to compile the dictionary.
 (Ông ấy phải mất ba năm để biên soạn cuốn từ điển.)
- coral ['kɔ:rəl] (n) : san hô
- crystal-clear ['krɪstl klɪr] (adj) : trong vắt như pha lê
- guess [ges] : (v) đoán; (n) sự suy đoán
 Ví dụ: Can you guess who I met in the street this morning?
 (Bạn có đoán được tôi đã gặp ai trên phố sáng nay không?)
- honor ['ɑ:nər] : (n) danh dự; (v) tôn vinh người nào
 Ví dụ: The government honored the boy for his bravery.
 (Chính phủ đã tôn vinh cậu bé vì sự dũng cảm của cậu ấy.)
- inhabit [ɪn'hæbɪt] (v) : ở; cư ngụ
- inhabitant [ɪn'hæbɪtənt] (n) : cư dân
 Ví dụ: My grandfather is the oldest inhabitant of the village.
 (Ông tôi là cư dân già nhất trong làng.)
- jungle ['dʒʌŋɡl] (n) : rừng già
- marine [mə'ri:n] (adj) : thuộc về biển
- opera ['ɑ:prə] (n) : nhạc kịch
- originally [ə'rɪdʒənəli] (adv) : đầu tiên
 Ví dụ: This high school was originally a small primary school.
 (Trường trung học này đầu tiên chỉ là một trường tiểu học nhỏ.)
- pyramid ['pɪrəməɪd] (n) : kim tự tháp
- reef [ri:f] (n) : dải đá hoặc cát ở giữa biển
- relax [rɪ'læks] (v) : thư giãn
 Ví dụ: He likes to relax with a good movie on TV after work.
 (Anh ấy thích thư giãn bằng một bộ phim hay sau giờ làm việc.)
- relaxation [rɪ'læks'eɪʃn] (n) : sự thư giãn
- relaxing [rɪ'læksɪŋ] (adj) : làm thư giãn; thoải mái

- religion [rɪˈlɪdʒən] (n) : tôn giáo
- religious [rɪˈlɪdʒəs] (adj) : thuộc về tôn giáo
- royal [ˈrɔɪəl] (adj) : thuộc về hoàng gia
- ruler [ˈru:lər] (n) : người cai trị
- snorkel [ˈsnɔ:rkəl] (v) : lặn với mặt nạ và ống thở
- snorkeling [ˈsnɔ:rkəlɪŋ] (n) : môn lặn với mặt nạ và ống thở
- Stonehenge [ˌstounˈhendʒ] (n) : di tích những tảng đá xếp theo vòng tròn ở Salisbury Plain ở nước Anh
- surround [səˈraʊnd] (v) : bao quanh

Ví dụ: Their house is surrounded by beautiful flower gardens.

(Nhà của họ được bao quanh bởi những vườn hoa xinh đẹp.)

- tower [ˈtaʊər] (n) : cái tháp
- wonder [ˈwʌndər] (n) : kì quan

Ví dụ: Ha Long Bay is recognized as a natural wonder of the world.

(Vịnh Hạ Long được công nhận là một kì quan thiên nhiên của thế giới.)

downloadsachmienphi.com

Download Sách Hay / Đọc Sách Online

GRAMMAR

1/ Reported speech with Yes-No questions

2/ Question words + to-infinitive

3/ Verbs + to-infinitive

1/ Reported speech with Yes-No questions

(Câu tường thuật với câu hỏi 'Yes-No')

- **Yes-No questions:** là loại câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng một trợ động từ hoặc động từ 'Be'. Khi trả lời loại câu hỏi này, chúng ta thường bắt đầu bằng 'Yes' hoặc 'No'. Ví dụ:
 - "Do you like this book?" "Yes, I do."
 - "Can you drive a car?" "No, I can't."
- **Reported speech with Yes-No questions:** Khi tường thuật câu hỏi 'Yes-No', chúng ta dùng 'if' hoặc 'whether' và thường mở đầu câu tường thuật bằng: *He/She asked me if / whether ...*. Ví dụ:

Direct speech: “Do you like this book?” Tom asked.

Reported speech: Tom asked me { if I liked that book.
whether }

Direct speech: “Can you drive a car?” Susan asked.

Reported speech: Susan asked me { if I could drive a car.
whether }

- CHÚ Ý: Khi đổi câu hỏi ‘Yes-No’ sang câu tường thuật, chúng ta cần ghi nhớ những điểm sau:

1/ Bỏ dấu ngoặc kép và dấu chấm hỏi.

2/ Mở đầu câu tường thuật bằng: (He / She / They) asked (me / you / ...) if / whether ...; hoặc (He / She / They) wondered if / whether ...

3/ Thay đổi đại từ nhân xưng. Ví dụ:

Direct speech		Reported speech
You	 đổi thành	I / We
you		me / us
your		my / our
I		he / she
me		him / her
my		his / her
we		they
us		them
our		their

4/ Thay đổi thì và hình thức của động từ. (Hãy xem lại bảng đối chiếu thay đổi thì từ câu trực tiếp sang câu tường thuật trong phần ngữ pháp Unit 13 của sách này.)

5/ Thay đổi cách nói thời gian và nơi chốn. (Hãy xem lại bảng đối chiếu trong phần ngữ pháp Unit 13 của sách này.)

Ghi nhớ: Khi đổi câu hỏi trực tiếp ‘Yes-No’ sang câu tường thuật, chúng cũng làm tất cả những thay đổi cần thiết như khi tường thuật câu nói bình thường, nhưng chỉ khác là chúng ta phải dùng ‘if’ hoặc ‘whether’ để mở đầu câu hỏi tường thuật. Hãy so sánh cách thay đổi thì và những điểm khác từ câu hỏi trực tiếp ‘Yes-No’ sang câu tường thuật trong bảng sau đây:

Direct speech	Reported speech
<i>Present simple</i> "Do you live here?" Ann said.	<i>Past simple</i> Ann asked me if / whether I <i>lived</i> there.
<i>Past simple</i> "Did you hear the news on TV?" Tony said.	<i>Past perfect</i> Tony asked me if / whether I <i>had heard</i> the news on TV.
<i>Present perfect</i> "Has your sister finished university yet?" Peter said.	<i>Past perfect</i> Peter asked me if / whether my sister <i>had finished</i> university yet.
<i>Future simple: 'will'</i> "Will you come round for dinner?" Wendy asked Bill.	<i>'would'</i> Wendy asked Bill if / whether he <i>would come</i> round for dinner.
<i>Modals: 'can / may'</i> "Can you play any sports, Nam?" Van asked.	<i>'could / might'</i> Van asked Nam if / whether he <i>could play</i> any sports.
<i>Modals: 'should / must'</i> "Must I return this book by Saturday?" Lan said.	<i>'should / must'</i> Lan asked me if / whether she <i>must / had to return</i> that book by Saturday.

2/ Question words + *to*-infinitive

(Các từ để đặt câu hỏi + *to*-nguyên mẫu)

- **Question words:** Là các từ dùng để đặt câu hỏi, gồm có: **What, Where, When, Who, Which, How, Why.**
- **Question words + *to*-infinitive:** Khi chúng ta dùng các từ để đặt câu hỏi ở vị trí tân ngữ (ở giữa câu – không phải ở đầu câu), chúng ta có thể dùng hình thức động từ '*to*-nguyên mẫu' theo sau chúng:

Subject + verb +

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{what} \\ \text{where} \\ \text{when} \\ \text{which} \\ \text{how} \end{array} \right\} + \text{to-infinitive}$$

- Một số ví dụ với cấu trúc '**Question words + *to*-infinitive**':
 - I don't know *what to do* now. (= I don't know what I should do now.)
 (Tôi không biết phải làm gì bây giờ.)

- Can you show me *how to use* this machine? (= ... how I can use ...)
(Bạn có thể chỉ tôi cách dùng máy này được không ạ?)
- They didn't know *where to go*, so they stayed home.
(Họ không biết phải đi đâu, nên họ ở nhà.)
- There are so many things at the shop that I don't know *which to buy*.
(Có quá nhiều món ở cửa hàng đến nỗi tôi không biết nên mua món nào.)
- Please, tell me *when to pay* for the rent.
(Xin vui lòng cho tôi biết khi nào phải trả tiền thuê nhà.)

3/ Verbs + *to*-infinitive

(Động từ theo sau bằng *to*-nguyên mẫu)

- Trong tiếng Anh có một số động từ khi chúng ta dùng thêm một động từ theo sau chúng, phải dùng hình thức '*to*-infinitive' (nguyên mẫu có '*to*'). Ví dụ:
 - I want *to buy* a new dictionary. (want + *to*-infinitive)
(Tôi muốn mua một cuốn từ điển mới.)
 - They decided *to hold* a class meeting. (decide + *to*-infinitive)
(Họ quyết định tổ chức một cuộc họp lớp.)
 - We agreed *to meet* after class. (agree + *to*-infinitive)
(Chúng tôi đồng ý gặp nhau sau giờ học.)
- Có khá nhiều động từ có thể dùng '*to*-infinitive' theo sau (hơn 40 động từ loại này), nhưng trong phạm vi bài này, chúng ta chỉ khảo sát một số động từ thông dụng sau đây:

Verb + <i>to</i>-infinitive	Meaning
- afford to do sth	: có đủ tiền
- agree to do sth	: đồng ý
- begin to do sth *	: bắt đầu
- continue to do sth *	: tiếp tục
- decide to do sth	: quyết định
- help to do sth	: giúp đỡ
- hope to do sth	: hy vọng
- learn to do sth	: học
- start to do sth *	: bắt đầu
- try to do sth *	: cố gắng
- want to do sth	: muốn
- would like to do sth	: muốn

• Một vài ví dụ với ‘Verb + to-infinitive’:

- I *want to have* a laptop, but I can't *afford to buy* it.

(Tôi muốn có một máy tính xách tay, nhưng tôi không đủ tiền mua nó.)

- When did you *begin to study* English?

(Bạn bắt đầu học tiếng Anh khi nào?)

- My brother *hopes to find* a good job when he finishes university.

(Anh tôi hy vọng tìm được việc làm tốt khi ra trường đại học.)

CHÚ Ý: Các động từ ‘begin, start, continue’ có thể theo sau bằng động từ ‘Verb-ing’ mà ý nghĩa không thay đổi. Động từ ‘try’ có thể theo sau bằng động từ ‘Verb-ing’ nhưng ý nghĩa có thay đổi. Ví dụ:

- He continued

{	<i>to work</i>	}
{	<i>working</i>	}

 until very late last night.

(Anh ấy tiếp tục làm việc cho mãi đến rất khuya tối qua.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

downloadsachmienphi.com

EXERCISE 1: Complete the following reported questions with the correct form of the verb. (Hãy hoàn thành các câu hỏi tường thuật sau đây bằng hình thức thích hợp của động từ.)

1. “Are you interested in my class?” Miss Lan asked.

Miss Lan asked me whether I was interested in her class.

2. “Can you give me your answer tomorrow?” Dan said.

Dan asked me if I _____ him my answer the next day.

3. “Should I stay home for another two days?” Mai asked the doctor.

Mai asked the doctor if she _____ home for another two days.

4. “Will your boss give you a pay rise?” Son said.

Son asked me whether my boss _____ me a pay rise.

5. “Have you ever had a nightmare?” Long asked Tam.

Long asked Tam whether he _____ a nightmare.

6. “Did your brother take this photograph of you?” Mai asked.

Mai asked me if my brother _____ that photograph of me.

7. “Were you at school yesterday?” Tram said.

Tram asked me if I _____ at school the day before.

8. “Do you know anything about biotechnology?” Kim asked.

Kim asked me if I _____ anything about biotechnology.

9. "Has Mr. Tan been to the United States?" Minh asked.

Minh asked me whether Mr. Tan _____ to the United States.

10. "Does your mother cook very well?" Hoa asked me.

Hoa asked me whether my mother _____ very well.

EXERCISE 2: Change the following direct questions to reported speech. (Hãy đổi những câu hỏi trực tiếp sau đây sang câu tường thuật.)

1. "Do you enjoy studying at this school?" Phuong asked.

Phuong asked me *if/whether I enjoyed studying at that school.*

2. "Are you happy in my class?" Miss Hong said.

Miss Hong asked me _____

3. "Will we be at school before 7.00 tomorrow?" Lan asked Thi.

Lan asked Thi _____

4. "Does Mr. Bao speak English very well?" Van asked Hoa.

Van asked Hoa _____

5. "Have your parents been married for over 20 years?" Vu asked Nam.

Vu asked Nam _____

6. "Can you hear me clearly?" Miss Yen said.

Miss Yen asked us _____

7. "Is this book yours?" Dat asked me.

Dat asked me _____

8. "Should I take a course in computer science?" Thuy said.

Thuy asked me _____

9. "May I borrow this book for a few days?" Mai said.

Mai asked the teacher _____

10. "Did you have a vacation last month?" Man asked me.

Man asked me _____

EXERCISE 3: Rewrite the italic part in each sentence using the structure 'Question word + to-infinitive'. (Hãy viết lại phần in nghiêng trong mỗi câu bằng cách dùng cấu trúc 'Question word + to-infinitive'.)

1. I want to know *what I should do* now.

I want to know what to do now.

2. I wonder *who I should invite* to the party.

I wonder _____ to the party.

3. Could you please tell me *how I can get* to the airport?

Could you please tell me _____ to the airport?

4. I don't know *where I can put* the car.
I don't know _____ the car.
5. I have three offers of work, but I don't know *which I should choose*.
I have three offers of work, but I don't know _____.
6. *Van had a new bookcase and she wondered where she should put it.*
Van had a new bookcase and she wondered _____ it.
7. You must show me *how I can play* this game first!
You must show me _____ this game first!
8. OK. I'll be there, but can you tell *when I should come*?
OK. I'll be there, but can you tell _____?
9. Vy gave me this file, but she didn't tell me *what I should do* with it.
Vy gave me this file, but she didn't tell me _____ with it.
10. Kim wants to know *who she should send* her application to.
Kim wants to know _____ her application to.

EXERCISE 4: Complete each sentence with the correct form of one of the following the verbs: *to*-infinitive or bare infinitive. Use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của một trong các động từ sau: dùng nguyên mẫu có 'to' hoặc nguyên mẫu không 'to'. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>enter</i>	<i>answer</i>	<i>snow</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>read</i>	<i>go</i>
<i>pass</i>	<i>meet</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>rain</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>send</i>

1. I don't want to see him again.
2. It may snow tonight.
3. When did you learn _____ the piano?
4. You should _____ more vegetables and less meat.
5. I would like _____ you again soon.
6. Thanh said she would _____ my question the next day.
7. Can your parents afford _____ you to a university abroad?
8. Jim invited Sue to dinner, but she didn't agree _____ with him.
9. I hope _____ my exams with good marks.
10. Could you _____ when you were five years old?
11. It started _____ heavily when we left the house.
12. Ha decided _____ the singing competition.

EXERCISE 5: Complete the conversation with the passive form of the past simple of one of the following verbs. Use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành đoạn đối thoại bằng hình thức bị động thì quá khứ đơn của một trong các động từ sau. Dùng mỗi động từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>show</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>organize</i>	<i>put</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>serve</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>meet</i>	<i>prepare</i>	<i>clean</i>

Lan: Hi, Nam. How was the vacation?

Nam: Oh, it was great. Everything (1) was organized so well. As soon as we arrived at the airport, we (2) _____ and (3) _____ to the hotel by our tour guide. All the rooms (4) _____ well and fresh flowers (5) _____ on the tables.

Lan: Oh, how lovely! And what about the food?

Nam: It was so good. I can say all food (6) _____ well every day and soft drinks (7) _____ free for everyone. Especially, seafood (8) _____ in an excellent way!

Lan: Wow, it sounds cool! And what about the surrounding area? Was that nice?

Nam: Oh, beautiful! There were sightseeing tours every day and we (9) _____ to all the local sights. There was so much history to see. I must say all of us (10) _____ good care of during the vacation.

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

- Two days ago, Van asked me _____ to join the English Speaking Club.
A. did I want B. that I wanted
C. if I wanted D. if did I want
- Please, show me _____ the fish!
A. how to cook B. how do I cook
C. how cooking D. how I to cook
- I just wondered _____ I should send her a letter.
A. what B. whether C. who D. that
- I wonder _____ come to our party.
A. if will she B. will she C. she will D. if she will

5. Catch the bus! You know we can't afford _____ a taxi!
A. take B. taking C. to take D. we take
6. I don't care what you decide _____.
A. to do B. doing C. you do D. for doing
7. My friend Tuan _____ to go to medical school when he finishes high school.
A. hopes B. enjoys C. interests D. thinks
8. Did they tell you _____ on your arrival?
A. who meet B. who meeting
C. who to meet D. who you will meet
9. It takes a long time to learn _____ a foreign language well.
A. speak B. speaking C. how speaks D. to speak
10. "Would you like _____ for another three days?" Ann said.
A. stay B. to stay C. staying D. stayed

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

[Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online](https://bookgiaokhoa.com)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. The foreigner asked me if did I understand what he said.
A B C D
2. Miss Lan asked Mr. Tan whether he is teaching the 8th grade.
A B C D
3. I'm thinking about the vacation, but I can't decide where going yet.
A B C D
4. On behalf of the family, I would like thank you for your kindness.
A B C D
5. I want to be healthy and I enjoy to exercise every morning.
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
attraction: sự hấp dẫn; địa điểm thu hút du lịch	attract: hấp dẫn; thu hút	attractive: hấp dẫn; quyến rũ	attractively: hấp dẫn
boredom: sự buồn chán	bore: làm buồn chán	bored: bị buồn chán boring: gây buồn chán	boringly: một cách buồn chán
compilation: sự biên soạn compiler: người biên soạn	compile: biên soạn		
ease: sự dễ dàng	ease: làm nhẹ bớt; làm dịu	easy: dễ dàng	easily: một cách dễ dàng
honor / honour: danh dự	honor / honour: tôn trọng	honorable / honourable: đáng kính trọng	
religion: tôn giáo; tín ngưỡng		religious: về tín ngưỡng; ngoan đạo	religiously: siêng năng; ngoan đạo
surroundings: vùng chung quanh; môi trường	surround: bao quanh	surrounding: gần; lân cận	
wonder: sự kinh ngạc; kì quan	wonder: tự hỏi; kinh ngạc	wonderful: tuyệt vời	wonderfully: tuyệt vời

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

- It is believed that children learn languages more _____ than adults. (easy)
- Mr. Kruger is a very _____ man in this town. (honor)
- The children quickly got _____ with staying indoors. (bore)
- Goods are _____ displayed in shop windows at Christmas. (attract)
- The _____ of a dictionary requires a lot of patience and knowledge. (compile)

6. Ha Long Bay has been nominated as one the natural _____ of the world. (wonderful)
7. Phan Thiet has several _____ resorts along the seashore. (attract)
8. Learning English online is an escape from the _____ of her daily life. (bore)
9. The _____ countryside has been urbanized very quickly. (surround)
10. The doctor gave me some tablets to _____ my pain. (easy)
11. Divorce is contrary to her _____ beliefs. (religion)
12. Nancy enjoys her job as a reporter. She's never found it _____. (bore)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

claim (v)	: cho rằng
clue (n)	: manh mối; dấu vết
explain (v)	: giải thích
inhabitant (n)	: cư dân
relaxing (adj)	: thư thái; thoải mái
royal (adj)	: thuộc về hoàng gia
temple (n)	: ngôi đền
used to (v)	: đã từng

1. The party was attended by some members of the _____ family.
2. Angkor Wat, built to honor a Hindu God, is the largest _____ in the world.
3. 'Can you guess what I have in my hand?' 'Give me a _____.'
4. We spent a _____ vacation of five days on the island.
5. Before giving us a game to play in class, the teacher began to _____ the rules.
6. Some scientists _____ that they have found a cure for AIDS.
7. Hue _____ be the capital of our country.
8. My grandfather is the oldest _____ of the village.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. A. wonder | B. tourist | C. compile | D. ancient |
| 2. A. attraction | B. surrounding | C. religious | D. pyramid |
| 3. A. century | B. vacation | C. national | D. capital |
| 4. A. correct | B. famous | C. question | D. empire |
| 5. A. relax | B. explain | C. snorkel | D. suggest |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> no <u>r</u> kel | B. <u>g</u> olden | C. <u>s</u> to <u>n</u> e | D. <u>o</u> ld |
| 2. A. <u>cl</u> ue | B. <u>bl</u> ue | C. <u>sh</u> oe | D. <u>qu</u> ee <u>u</u> e |
| 3. A. <u>g</u> uess | B. <u>s</u> ugg <u>e</u> st | C. <u>g</u> ain | D. <u>g</u> oods |
| 4. A. <u>t</u> ow <u>e</u> r | B. <u>p</u> ow <u>e</u> r | C. <u>kn</u> ow <u>n</u> | D. <u>f</u> low <u>e</u> r |
| 5. A. <u>w</u> ond <u>e</u> r | B. <u>m</u> on <u>t</u> h | C. <u>w</u> on | D. <u>f</u> ond |

PROGRESS TEST 7

(Unit 13 and Unit 14)

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

- Thank you very much _____ inviting me to the festival.
A. about B. for C. with D. of
- The supporters urged their team _____ faster.
A. to run B. run C. ran D. running
- The grand prize _____ to the team that cooked the most delicious rice.
A. awards B. awarded C. is awarded D. is awarding
- The first Christmas card _____ by an Englishman in the mid-19th century.
A. designed B. is designed C. was designed D. has designed
- Yesterday Tan asked me _____ I wanted to go to the stadium with him, but I said I was busy doing my homework.
A. what B. where C. that D. if
- They decided _____ on a tour of Egypt to see the Great Pyramid of Giza.
A. to go B. going C. went D. go
- The tourist guide showed us where _____ the souvenirs.
A. buy B. buying C. bought D. to buy

8. Angkor Wat was first built in order to _____ a Hindu God.
 A. become B. honor C. claim D. include

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

- Ha Long Bay _____ to become a natural wonder of the world two years ago. (choose)
- I asked my friend Hung whether he _____ to join our English Speaking Club. (want)
- Nga and her sister are on a vacation in Dalat now. They _____ at a hotel near Xuan Huong Lake. (stay)
- Mai has some friends living in other towns, and she usually _____ them greeting cards at Christmas. (send)

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

- At the police station, a policeman asked me to give him a _____ of my lost bicycle. (describe)
- This movie is _____ for the children, so don't let them watch it. (suitable)
- The old church is one of the main tourist _____ of the town. (attract)
- My great-grandfather was one of the first _____ of the town. (inhabit)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box. There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

<i>dress</i>	<i>wear</i>	<i>noise</i>	<i>connected</i>	<i>games</i>
--------------	-------------	--------------	------------------	--------------

Hallowe'en means 'holy evening', and takes place on the 31st October. Although it is a much more important festival in the United States than Britain, it is celebrated by many people in the UK. It is particularly (1) _____ with witches and ghosts.

At parties people (2) _____ up in strange costumes and pretend they are witches. They cut horrible faces in potatoes and other vegetables and put a candle inside, which shines through the eyes. People may play difficult (3) _____ such as trying to eat an apple from a bucket of water without using their hands.

In recent years children dressed in white sheets knock on doors at Hallowe'en and ask if you would like a 'trick' or 'treat'. If you give them something nice, a 'treat', they go away. However, if you don't they play a 'trick' on you, such as making a lot of (4) _____ or spilling flour on your front doorstep!

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

The ancient Greeks made a list of places they thought people should see. This list was named the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. The Greeks chose seven wonders, because in their culture this number meant perfection. The only one of the ancient wonders that still exists is in Giza, Egypt. This wonder is the Great Pyramid of Giza. It was one of three great pyramids built around 2500 B.C. It is the oldest wonder of the seven. People do not know how these pyramids were built but we know that they took over 20 years to complete. For a long time, the Great Pyramid was believed to be the tallest structure in the world. Pyramids were built as tombs for the leaders of Egypt called Pharaohs. Many travelers still visit the Great Pyramid today.

The Seven Wonders of the Ancient World are unknown to many people because most of these structures were destroyed so long ago. While it is sad people cannot see most of these wonders in person, the detailed stories about them help people know how special they were.

1. In Ancient Greek culture, number seven meant perfection.
2. The Great Pyramid of Giza was built around 2500 years ago.
3. It took only twelve years to build the Egyptian pyramids.
4. We do not know how special the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World were because most of them were destroyed.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. Millions of tourists visit the Taj Mahal in India every year.

The Taj Mahal in India

2. "Do you send Christmas cards to your friends every year?" Lan asked.

Lan asked me

3. "I'm very pleased to see the rice-cooking contest," Lisa said.

Lisa said that

4. "Are the judges going to announce the results?" Lisa asked.

Lisa asked Ba

Unit

15

COMPUTERS

(Máy vi tính)

VOCABULARY

- adjust [ə'dʒʌst] (v) : điều chỉnh

Ví dụ: You can turn that knob to adjust the volume of the speakers.

(Bạn có thể vặn nút kia để điều chỉnh âm thanh của cái loa.)

- bulletin ['bʊlətɪn] (n) : bản tin
- bulletin board ['bʊlətɪn bɔ:rd] (n) : trang thông tin cá nhân trên mạng
- campus ['kæmpəs] (n) : khuôn viên trường đại học
- challenge ['tʃæləndʒ] (n) : sự thách thức; (v) thách thức
- challenging ['tʃælɪndʒɪŋ] (adj) : có nhiều thách thức

Ví dụ: Since we did the last test so well, the teacher will give us something more challenging this time.

(Vi chúng tôi đã làm bài kiểm tra vừa rồi quá tốt cho nên lần này cô giáo sẽ cho chúng tôi cái gì đó nhiều thách thức hơn.)

- concern [kən'sɜ:n] (n) : mối quan tâm
- connect [kə'nekt] (v) : kết nối

Ví dụ: You must connect the printer to the computer before printing anything.

(Bạn phải kết nối máy in với máy tính trước khi in bất cứ thứ gì.)

- degree [di'ɡri:] (n) : bằng cấp đại học; học vị

Ví dụ: My teacher has a master's degree from the National University.

(Cô giáo tôi có bằng thạc sĩ của Đại học Quốc gia.)

- freshman ['frefsmən] (plural : freshmen) (n): sinh viên năm thứ nhất
- guarantee [ˌɡærən'ti:] (n) : sự bảo hành; (v) bảo hành

Ví dụ: This refrigerator comes with a two-year guarantee.

(Cái tủ lạnh này có thời hạn bảo hành hai năm.)

- install [ɪn'stɔ:l] (v) : cài đặt, lắp đặt
- jack [dʒæk] (n) : ổ cắm (các thiết bị điện)
- knob [nɔ:b] (n) : nút vặn (của máy)
- manual ['mænjuəl] (n) : sách hướng dẫn

Ví dụ: This motorbike always comes with a manual in five different languages.

(Xe máy này luôn kèm theo sách hướng dẫn bằng năm thứ tiếng khác nhau.)

- plug [plʌɡ] (n) : ổ cắm điện

- post [poust] (v): đưa thông tin lên mạng Internet
 Ví dụ: Somebody has posted this false information on our website.
 (Có người đã đưa thông tin sai này lên trang web của chúng ta.)
- print [print] (v) : in ấn
- printer ['prɪntər] (n) : máy in
- proper ['pru:pər] (adj) : đúng đắn; phù hợp
- properly ['pru:pərli] (adv) : một cách đúng đắn, phù hợp
 Ví dụ: You're not a baby now – you must speak properly, son!
 (Bây giờ con không còn là em bé nữa – con trai, con phải nói năng đúng đắn!)
- require [rɪ'kwaɪər] (v) : đòi hỏi; yêu cầu
- requirement [rɪ'kwaɪəmənt] (n) : sự đòi hỏi; điều kiện
 Ví dụ: You must meet these requirements if you want to take this course.
 (Bạn phải đáp ứng các điều kiện này nếu bạn muốn tham dự khóa học.)
- restrict (to) [rɪ'strɪkt] (v): hạn chế
 Ví dụ: The number of students in each class is restricted to 20.
 (Số học sinh trong mỗi lớp được hạn chế chỉ 20 em.)
- skeptical (about/of) [ˌskeptɪkl] (adj): hoài nghi
 Ví dụ: I am not skeptical about our chances of success.
 (Tôi không hoài nghi về những cơ may thành công của chúng ta.)
- store [stɔ:r] (v) : lưu trữ
 Ví dụ: You can store a large amount of information in the computer.
 (Bạn có thể lưu trữ một số lượng thông tin rất lớn trong máy tính.)
- time-consuming [ˌtaɪmkənˌsju:mɪŋ] (adj) : tốn thời gian
 Ví dụ: Compiling a dictionary is a very time-consuming job.
 (Biên soạn một cuốn từ điển là một công việc tốn nhiều thời gian.)
- topic [ˈtɑ:pɪk] (n): đề tài

GRAMMAR

1/ Present perfect with *yet* and *already*

2/ Present perfect vs. past simple

1/ Present perfect with *yet* and *already*

(Thì hiện tại hoàn thành với '*yet*' và '*already*')

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành thường được dùng với một số trạng từ như '*yet*' và '*already*'.

- **'yet'** (= chưa) : được dùng trong câu hỏi hoặc câu phủ định, và được đặt cuối câu. Ví dụ:
 - Have you cleaned the room *yet*? (*Bạn đã làm vệ sinh phòng chưa?*)
 - We haven't visited Paris *yet*. (*Chúng tôi chưa viếng thăm Paris.*)
- **'already'** (= rồi) : thường được đặt giữa trợ động từ *'have/has'* và động từ chính. Ví dụ:
 - I've *already* read this book. (*Tôi đã đọc cuốn sách này rồi.*)
 - You're late again, Bao! The lesson has *already* begun!
 (*Em lại trễ nữa rồi, Bảo! Tiết học đã bắt đầu rồi!*)

2/ Present perfect vs. past simple

(Thì hiện tại hoàn thành và thì quá khứ đơn)

Present perfect	Past simple
Thì hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ, nhưng không xác định thời gian. Chúng ta thường dùng các trạng từ : <i>already, yet, just, several times, ...</i>. Ví dụ: - I've just met Nam, an old friend. (Tôi vừa mới gặp Nam, một người bạn cũ.) - This movie is very interesting. I've seen it several times. (Phim này rất hay. Tôi đã xem nó vài ba lần.)	Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ với thời gian xác định rõ. Các cách nói thời gian thường gặp là: <i>yesterday, last year, two days ago, in 2007, ...</i>. Ví dụ: - I met Nam, an old friend, yesterday. (Tôi gặp Nam, một người bạn cũ, ngày hôm qua.) - It was a good movie. I saw it two days ago. (Đó là một phim hay. Tôi đã xem nó hai ngày trước.)
Thì hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ và tiếp tục cho đến hiện tại. Chúng ta thường dùng <i>'for'</i> hoặc <i>'since'</i> với thời gian. Ví dụ: - Mr. Hawk has been in this town for three days. (Ông Hawk đã ở thành phố này ba ngày nay.) - I have been in this class since January. (Tôi đã học lớp này từ tháng giêng.)	Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ và chấm dứt trong quá khứ. Chúng ta có thể dùng <i>'for'</i> với thời gian. Ví dụ: - Mr. Hawk was in Paris for two weeks. After that, he went to London. (Ông Hawk đã ở Paris hai tuần. Sau đó ông ấy đi London.)

CHÚ Ý: Trong đàm thoại, khi chúng ta muốn hỏi người nghe đã có làm việc gì chưa, chúng ta dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành. Nếu người nghe đã có làm, thì những trao đổi tiếp theo về việc đó sẽ được dùng ở thì quá khứ đơn. Ví dụ:

- A: Have you seen *The Lord of the Rings*?
 B: Yes, I have.
 A: When did you see it?
 B: I saw it two months ago.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete the following dialogues using the present perfect with the cues given in parentheses. (Hãy hoàn thành các câu đối thoại sau bằng cách dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành với các gợi ý cho trong ngoặc.)

1. A: (You / mail / my letter / yet?) Have you mailed my letter yet?
 B: (Yes, I / already / mail / it.) Yes, I've already mailed it.
2. A: (You / hear / the news / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, I / already / hear / it.) _____
3. A: (You / eat / this fruit / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, I / already / eat / it.) _____
4. A: (Jill / write / the report / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, she / already / write / it.) _____
5. A: (Ted / repair / his bike / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, he / already / repair / it.) _____
6. A: (Messi / sign / the contract / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, he / already / sign / it.) _____
7. A: (Vera and Tom / get / engaged / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, they / already / do / it.) _____
8. A: (Paul / buy / a new car / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, he / already / buy / it.) _____
9. A: (Yen / pass / her driving test / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, she / already / pass / it.) _____
10. A: (You / send / the invitations / yet?) _____
 B: (Yes, I / already / send / them.) _____

EXERCISE 2: Complete the following dialogues using the present perfect or the past simple of the verbs in parentheses. (Hãy hoàn thành các đoạn đối thoại sau bằng cách dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì quá khứ đơn của các động từ trong ngoặc.)

1. A: Have you seen (you, see) a giraffe?
 B: Yes, already.
 A: Where did you see (you, see) it?
 B: I saw (see) one in the zoo last month.
2. A: _____ (you, visit) Sapa?
 B: Yes, already.
 A: When _____ (you, go) there?
 B: I _____ (go) there with my parents last summer.
3. A: _____ (you, eat) sushi?
 B: Yes, already.
 A: Where _____ (you / eat) it?
 B: I _____ (eat) it in a Japanese restaurant in HCM City.
4. A: _____ (you, meet) any famous person?
 B: Yes, already.
 A: Who _____ (you, meet)?
 B: I _____ (meet) David Beckham during his visit to this city.
5. A: _____ (Mai, take) the driving test?
 B: Yes, already.
 A: When _____ (she, take) it?
 B: She _____ (take) in July.
6. A: _____ (your brother, break) a bone?
 B: Yes, already.
 A: How _____ (he, break) it?
 B: He _____ (break) his leg falling off his bike.

EXERCISE 3: Put the verbs in parentheses in the correct tense. Use the present perfect or the past simple. (Hãy viết các động từ trong ngoặc với thì thích hợp. Dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì quá khứ đơn.)

Miss Lan is my English teacher. She lives in this city. She ____ (1. live) here for five years. She _____ (2. be born) in Hue. She _____ (3. live) there for twenty years. She teaches in my school now. She _____ (4. teach) here since last year. Before that, she _____ (5. teach) in an international school. She _____ (6. teach) there for two years.

EXERCISE 4: Complete each sentence with the present perfect or the past simple of the verb in parentheses. (Hãy hoàn thành mỗi câu với thì hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì quá khứ đơn của động từ trong ngoặc.)

1. My uncle, Tam, has lived (live) in Nha Trang since 2002.
2. My cousin, Mai, lived (live) in Ha Noi from 1998 to 2002.
3. Mr. Tuan _____ (go) to every soccer game this year.
4. We _____ (go) the pop concert in the central park last weekend.
5. _____ (you, ever, shake) hands with a famous person?
6. I _____ (shake) hands with a famous pop singer in 2007.
7. My brother _____ (play) professional soccer two years ago.
8. He _____ (play) professional soccer since he left school.
9. I _____ (collect) stamps when I was a child.
10. My friend _____ (collect) old coins for ten years now.

EXERCISE 5: Complete the passage with the correct tense of one of the following verbs. Use the present perfect or the past simple, and use each verb only once. (Hãy hoàn thành đoạn văn với thì thích hợp của một trong các động từ sau. Hãy dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì quá khứ đơn.)

play

win

score

leave

be

win

downloadsachmienphi.com

Last night Manchester United (1) won the football league championship. They (2) _____ the championship four times now. The first time (3) _____ in 1986. In their final game yesterday, Rooney (4) _____ the winning goal. Rooney (5) _____ for the team since he (6) _____ Everton Football Club.

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in

B. at

C. on

D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. "Have you tidied the room yet?" "Yes, I _____ it."
 A. didn't do
 B. haven't done
 C. have already done
 D. already done

2. All the information is now _____ in the university's computers.
A. store B. stored C. storing D. to store
3. The students must have a password to get access _____ the university's computer system.
A. to B. of C. for D. with
4. Some people are skeptical _____ the new method of education.
A. with B. about C. in D. for
5. "I'm having problems with my printer." "Well, let me see. Oh, your printer _____ been connected to the computer yet."
A. isn't B. wasn't C. didn't D. hasn't
6. Do you how _____ the computer into the main power?
A. plug B. plugging C. to plug D. plugged
7. I don't know _____.
A. what the problem is B. what is the problem
C. the problem is what D. what's the problem is
8. If there's a problem with the printer, you should call the store you _____ it from.
A. buying B. buy C. have buying D. bought
9. Linda _____ this job just two weeks ago.
A. gets B. getting C. got D. has gotten
10. Tracy _____ a headache since she got up this morning.
A. has B. has had C. had D. is having

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. The boy sitting beside me in class was sick since Monday.
A B C D
2. My younger brother has had a fever last night, but he is better now.
A B C D
3. I missed some lessons because I have caught a cold three days ago.
A B C D
4. You don't need to clean the room because I already have cleaned it.
A B C D
5. I've just finished my work yet, and I want to take a rest.
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
connection: sự kết nối; sự liên hệ	connect: kết nối		
help: sự giúp đỡ	help: giúp đỡ	helpful: hữu ích; sẵn lòng giúp đỡ	helpfully: sẵn lòng giúp đỡ
location: địa điểm	locate: tìm vị trí	located: được đặt tại đâu	
necessity: sự cần thiết		necessary: cần thiết	necessarily: cần thiết
		proper: thích hợp improper: không thích hợp	properly: thích hợp improperly: không thích hợp
restriction: sự hạn chế	restrict: hạn chế	restricted: bị hạn chế	
skeptic: người hay hoài nghi		skeptical: hoài nghi	skeptically: hoài nghi
technology: kĩ thuật technician: kĩ thuật viên		technological: về kĩ thuật	

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

1. Role-play is very _____ in teaching and learning English. (help)
2. A basic understanding of the computer is _____ for this job. (necessity)
3. We live in an age of rapid _____ advance. (technology)
4. This ticket permits you to travel any where, without _____. (restrict)
5. Your printer must be _____ to the computer. (connect)
6. Her office is _____ in the central area. (locate)
7. The shop-assistant _____ showed me some different kinds of computers. (help)

8. The tour guide showed us our _____ on the map. (locate)
9. The laptop is a _____ for his career as a reporter. (necessary)
10. Do you have any problems with your Internet _____ ? (connect)
11. Many teachers are _____ about the new teaching method. (skeptic)
12. We need a computer _____ to repair our computer system. (technology)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

access (n) : đường dẫn
 concern (n) : nỗi ưu tư, lo lắng
 guarantee (n) : thời gian bảo hành
 impact (n) : ảnh hưởng
 manual (n) : sách hướng dẫn
 post (v) : đưa thông tin lên mạng
 requirement (n) : điều kiện cần thiết
 topic (n) : đề tài

1. Could you please tell me the entrance _____ for this course?
2. They will _____ the results of the examination on the Internet.
3. The President's speech made a great _____ on young people.
4. You should read this _____ before using your new camera.
5. Your computer is still under _____. You can contact the dealer if there's any problem.
6. All the rooms of this hotel have _____ to the Internet.
7. The _____ of the discussion was the new book by Catherine.
8. Most parents' main _____ is their children's education.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. access | B. degree | C. concern | D. amuse |
| 2. A. method | B. campus | C. adjust | D. problem |
| 3. A. computer | B. recently | C. library | D. challenging |
| 4. A. difficult | B. dangerous | C. delicious | D. exercise |
| 5. A. restricted | B. location | C. skeptical | D. tradition |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kʌm]

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. A. f <u>o</u> und | B. thr <u>o</u> ugh | C. m <u>o</u> use | D. pr <u>o</u> ud |
| 2. A. a <u>u</u> st | B. b <u>u</u> t | C. tr <u>u</u> st | D. b <u>u</u> lletin |
| 3. A. c <u>o</u> mputer | B. c <u>o</u> ncern | C. c <u>o</u> ntain | D. c <u>o</u> llege |
| 4. A. m <u>e</u> ssage | B. d <u>e</u> gree | C. m <u>e</u> thod | D. fr <u>e</u> shmen |
| 5. A. p <u>o</u> st | B. m <u>o</u> nitor | C. k <u>o</u> nb | D. t <u>e</u> chn <u>o</u> logy |

Unit

16

INVENTIONS

(Những phát minh)

VOCABULARY

- appliance [ə'plɑ:ns] (n) : máy móc gia dụng

Ví dụ: The cooker, the refrigerator, and the washing machine are some of the appliances.

(Bếp nấu, tủ lạnh và máy giặt là một vài trong số những loại máy móc gia dụng.)

- cacao bean [kə'kɑ: bi:n] (n) : hạt ca-cao

- convey [kən'veɪ] (v) : truyền tải; chuyển đi

Ví dụ: These pipes convey clean water to all the apartments of this building.

(Những đường ống này chuyển nước sạch đến tất cả các căn hộ trong tòa nhà này.)

- conveyor belt [kən'veɪər belt] (n) : băng chuyền; băng tải

- crush [krʌʃ] (v) : nghiền nát

- defrost [di'frɔ:st] (v) : rã đông

Ví dụ: It will take about two hours to defrost the meat before you can cook it.
(Sẽ phải mất khoảng hai tiếng để rã đông thịt trước khi bạn có thể nấu nó.)

- Egypt ['i:dʒɪpt] (n) : nước Ai Cập

- Egyptian [i'dʒɪpɪn] : (n) người Ai Cập; (adj) thuộc về nước Ai Cập

- facsimile [fæk'sɪməli] (n) : máy fax

- flat [flæt] (adj) : bằng phẳng

- flatten ['flætɪn] (v) : làm phẳng

- foreman ['fɔ:rmən] (plural: foremen) (n): người đốc công

- grind [graɪnd] – ground – ground [graʊnd] (v): xay; nghiền

Ví dụ: I am looking for somewhere to grind these coffee beans.

(Tôi đang tìm nơi nào đó để xay chỗ hạt cà-phê này.)

- hairdryer ['heɪdraɪər] (n) : máy sấy tóc

- helicopter ['helɪkəptər] (n) : máy bay trực thăng

Ví dụ: The victims were carried to the hospital by helicopter.

(Những nạn nhân được chở tới bệnh viện bằng máy bay trực thăng.)

- liquefy ['liːkwɪfaɪ] (v) : ép hoặc vắt ra nước = liquify

- manufacture [ˌmænʃuˈfæktʃər] (v) : sản xuất

Ví dụ: My father works for a company that manufactures car parts.

(Ba tôi làm việc cho một công ty sản xuất các bộ phận xe ô-tô.)

- microwave ['maɪkrəweɪv] (n) : lò nướng vi sóng = microwave oven

- mold [mould] (n) : cái khuôn đúc = mould

- official [ə'fɪʃl] (n) : quan chức

- papyrus [pə'paɪrəs] (n) : một loại cây sậy được dùng làm giấy viết thời Ai Cập cổ đại

- process ['pru:səs] (n) : quy trình; tiến trình

Ví dụ: Making the water in this canal become clean again will be a slow process.

(Làm cho nước con kênh này trở nên sạch trở lại sẽ là một tiến trình lâu dài.)

- refine [rɪ'faɪn] (v) : lọc

- reinforced concrete [ˌrɪːn'fɔ:rst 'ka:ŋkri:t] (n): bê-tông cốt thép

- remove [rɪ'mu:v] (v) : lấy đi

Ví dụ: He removed his glasses and rubbed his eyes.

(Ông ấy nhấc kính ra và dụi mắt.)

- rinse [rɪns] (v) : xả sạch bằng nước

Ví dụ: First apply shampoo to hair and then rinse thoroughly.

(Trước hết thoa dầu gội vào tóc và sau đó xả nước sạch thật kỹ.)

- roll [rɒl] (v) : cán mỏng ra

- shell	[ʃel] (n)	: vỏ hạt; phần vỏ cứng (trái cây)
- utensil	[ju:ˈtensl] (n)	: dụng cụ dùng trong nhà
- wire	[ˈwaɪər] (n)	: dây điện
- wood pulp	[ˌwʊd ˈpʌlp] (n)	: bột gỗ để làm giấy

GRAMMAR

1/ Passive voice (Review)

2/ Sequence markers

1/ Passive voice (Review)

(Ôn tập câu bị động)

Chúng ta đã khảo sát hình thức và cách dùng của câu bị động trong Unit 10 và Unit 13. Trong bài này, chúng ta ôn lại tổng quát cách thay đổi hình thức động từ và các thành phần khác từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động.

Active	Passive
Present simple <i>They water the plants every day.</i>	'am/is/are + past participle' <i>The plants are watered every day.</i>
Present progressive <i>Ted is painting the chair.</i>	'am/is/are + being + past participle' <i>The chair is being painted by Ted.</i>
Past simple <i>Marge wrote this book.</i>	'was/were + past participle' <i>This book was written by Marge.</i>
Past progressive <i>They were repairing the bridge.</i>	'was/were + being + past participle' <i>The bridge was being repaired.</i>
Present perfect <i>Someone has sent the letter.</i>	'has/have + been + past participle' <i>The letter has been sent.</i>
Future simple: will <i>They will build a new road.</i>	'will + be + past participle' <i>A new road will be built.</i>
Future: 'be going to' <i>They are going to clean the room.</i>	'be going to + be + past participle' <i>The room is going to be cleaned.</i>
Modals: can/must/should <i>They can / must / should change the program.</i>	'can/must/should + be + past participle' <i>The program can / must / should be changed.</i>

GHI NHỚ:

- Động từ chính trong câu bị động luôn luôn ở dạng quá khứ phân từ (= past participle).
- Trong câu bị động luôn luôn có trợ động từ 'Be', với hình thức thích hợp.
- Tân ngữ của câu chủ động trở thành chủ ngữ của câu bị động.
- Chủ ngữ của câu chủ động có thể được dùng làm tác nhân của câu bị động và theo sau giới từ 'by + tác nhân'. Nhưng chúng ta không cần dùng 'by + tác nhân' khi chủ ngữ của câu chủ động là các từ: Someone, Somebody, People, They, You, We, ...

2/ Sequence markers

(Các từ mô tả chuỗi hành động liên tục)

Chúng ta dùng liên từ để nối các mệnh đề trong một câu. Chúng ta cũng dùng một số liên từ để nối các câu trong một đoạn. Các liên từ này được gọi là 'sequence markers' hoặc text organizers. Những liên từ này thường được đặt ở đầu câu và có dấu phẩy theo sau. Sau đây là một số liên từ thông dụng thuộc loại này:

- First / First of all : trước hết; đầu tiên
- Secondly : thứ hai là ...
- Next : tiếp đến ...
- Then : rồi thì ...
- After that : sau đó ...
- Finally / Lastly / Last of all : cuối cùng ...

Ví dụ: sau đây là một hướng dẫn cách pha trà.

First, wash the pot and the cups carefully with hot water. *Next*, boil some water in a kettle. *Then*, put some tea leaves in the pot. *After that*, pour boiling water on the tea leaves and cover the pot with the lid. *Next*, wait for five minutes or more. *Finally*, pour the tea into the cups and enjoy your freshly brewed tea.

(Trước hết, rửa sạch bình trà và tách trà cẩn thận bằng nước nóng. Tiếp theo, đun một ít nước trong một chiếc ấm. Rồi bỏ trà vào bình. Sau đó rót nước đun sôi lên trà và đậy nắp bình trà. Tiếp theo là chờ khoảng năm phút hoặc hơn. Cuối cùng rót trà vào tách và thưởng thức món trà ủ nóng của bạn.)

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Complete the passage with the passive of the verbs in parentheses.

Put the verbs in the tenses suggested. (Hãy hoàn thành đoạn văn với dạng bị động của các động từ trong ngoặc. Viết các động từ với thì gợi ý.)

The character Mickey Mouse was created (1. create – *past simple*) by Walt Disney. Mickey _____ (2. call – *present simple*) ‘Topolino’ in Italian and ‘Mi Lo Shu’ in Chinese. At first, Mickey _____ (3. call – *past simple*) Mortimer Mouse by Disney. Later, it _____ (4. give – *past simple*) the name Mickey by Walt Disney’s wife, Lillian. The first full-length cartoon, *Snow White*, _____ (5. make – *past simple*) by Walt Disney in 1937. Mickey Mouse cartoons _____ (6. translate – *present perfect*) into sixty languages.

EXERCISE 2: Rewrite the following sentences in the passive voice. (Hãy viết lại các câu sau ở dạng bị động.)

1. Someone always cuts the grass once a week.

The grass is always cut once a week.

2. They always keep the key in that box.

The key _____

3. They haven’t locked the front gate yet.

The front gate _____

4. Did they invite you to their party last week?

Were _____

5. Someone has seen the escaped prisoner in Denver.

The escaped prisoner _____

6. Farmers are picking apples at present.

Apples _____

7. Do people speak English at this resort?

Is _____

8. They will send the information to you soon.

The information _____

9. They should explain the job to us clearly.

The job _____

10. People are drinking more green tea these days.

More green tea _____

EXERCISE 3: Complete the passage with the passive or the active form of the verbs in parentheses. Put the verbs in the past simple or infinitive after modals. (Hãy hoàn thành đoạn văn với hình thức bị động hoặc chủ động của động từ trong ngoặc. Dùng động từ ở thì quá khứ đơn hoặc hoặc hình thức nguyên mẫu sau động từ khiếm khuyết.)

The Youth Sports Center was opened (0. open) yesterday by the Minister of Sport. The building was originally used as a warehouse, but _____ (1. sell) to the City Council in 2007. Then, it _____ (2. convert) into a sports hall. Local schools _____ (3. play) football and basketball indoors, and keep-fit classes _____ (4. hold) there. In 2008, the hall _____ (5. damage) by a fire which _____ (6. break out) in the electric system. Last year a local businessman _____ (7. offer) to pay for the building work, and plans _____ (8. draw up). The new hall includes a swimming pool, running tracks and other sports facilities which can _____ (9. use) by anyone in the area. The Minister _____ (10. make) a speech in which he congratulated everyone involved.

EXERCISE 4: Rewrite the following sentences in the active voice. (Hãy viết lại những câu sau ở dạng chủ động.)

- My bicycle was stolen two days ago.
Someone stole my bicycle two days ago.
- This letter has not been signed yet.
No one
- The painting competition was won by a nine-year-old boy.
A nine-year-old boy
- This package will be sent to your friend today.
We
- The museum is visited by thousands of people each month.
Thousands of people
- Ann should be invited to the party.
We
- The bank robbers have been arrested by the police.
The police

8. The old house on the corner has been sold.

They

9. This book wasn't written by J. K. Rowling.

J. K. Rowling

10. The suspect is being followed by the police.

The police

EXERCISE 5: The following is the instruction of making a cup of black coffee.

Put the sentences in the correct order from (1) to (8) and complete the space at the beginning of each sentence with the right sequence marker from the box. Use each sequence markers only once. (Sau đây là hướng dẫn cách pha một tách cà phê đen. Hãy sắp các câu theo trật tự thích hợp và điền vào khoảng trống đầu câu bằng liên từ thích hợp. Dùng mỗi liên từ chỉ một lần.)

<i>Then</i>	<i>Finally</i>	<i>First</i>	<i>After that</i>
<i>Then</i>	<i>Next</i>	<i>After that</i>	<i>Secondly</i>

- _____, wait until the black liquid stops dripping from the filter.
- _____, pour boiling water on the coffee in the filter.
- _____, put some sugar in the coffee and enjoy your freshly brewed coffee.
- _____, boil some water in a kettle.
- _____, cover the filter with the lid.
- _____, put some coffee in the filter and put it onto the cup.
- _____, remove the filter from the cup.
- _____, take out a clean filter and a cup.

- First , take out a clean filter and a cup.
- _____ , _____
- _____ , _____
- _____ , _____
- _____ , _____
- _____ , _____
- _____ , _____
- _____ , _____

EXERCISE 6: Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best completes each of the following sentences. (Hãy chọn từ hoặc nhóm từ thích hợp (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau.)

Example: The traffic is always heavy _____ Monday mornings.

A. in B. at C. on D. for

Đáp án: C. on

1. Do you like that photo? It _____ by my aunt, who is a professional photographer.
A. took B. has taken C. was taken D. was taking
2. The company _____ Mr. Hope a gold watch when he retired.
A. gives B. gave C. was given D. giving
3. Some fingerprints _____ found on the handle of the knife.
A. have B. were C. could D. be
4. My village can _____ on this map. It's just there, in the middle.
A. see B. be seeing C. be seen D. being seen
5. The last time I _____ a plane was in 2006.
A. flew B. fly C. have flown D. was flown
6. More coffee _____ in this country than in my country.
A. is drunk B. drinks C. is drinking D. has drunk
7. I'm afraid you're not _____ to smoke here!
A. allow B. allowing C. to allow D. allowed
8. He bought a small house and _____ it himself.
A. painted B. was painted C. was paint D. painting
9. 'Why don't you clean the room today?' 'OK. It'll _____ at once.'
A. be cleaning B. cleaning C. clean D. be cleaned
10. 'Do you need my help?' 'No, thanks. I can _____ the problem myself.'
A. solving B. be solved C. solve D. to be solved

EXERCISE 7: Choose the underlined part in each sentence that needs correcting. (Chọn phần gạch dưới cần phải sửa lại trong mỗi câu.)

Example: You are enough lucky to have very generous parents.

A B C D

Đáp án: B: phải sửa lại là: *lucky enough*

1. A lot of money has saved from recycling paper.
A B C D

2. A friend of mine was repaired the motorbike for me the other day.
A B C D
3. These carpets are made by children who are worked 12 hours a day.
A B C D
4. Her first book was writing when she was studying at college.
A B C D
5. Their missing boy's photo was been shown to the police.
A B C D

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

WORD CHART

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
behavior: cách cư xử	behave: cư xử; cư xử đúng đắn misbehave: cư xử không đúng đắn	- well-behaved: ngoan ngoãn - badly-behaved: không ngoan	
- invention: một phát minh - inventor: nhà phát minh	invent: sáng chế	inventive: có óc sáng tạo; mới lạ	
liquid: chất lỏng	liquefy: làm thành chất lỏng		
- manufacture: việc sản xuất - manufacturer: nhà sản xuất	manufacture: sản xuất		
mixture: một hỗn hợp	mix: pha trộn	mixed: bị pha trộn; hỗn tạp	
- official: quan chức - office: văn phòng		official: chính thức	officially: một cách chính thức
- prison: nhà tù - prisoner: tù nhân - imprisonment: sự kết án tù	imprison: giam tù		
weight: trọng lượng	weigh: cân đo; cân nặng	overweight: mập; quá cân	

EXERCISE 1: Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu với hình thức thích hợp của từ trong ngoặc.)

Example: My grandfather is over 80, but he is still very active . (act)

1. English is an _____ language in many countries. (office)
2. Thousands of _____ will be released on the occasion of the Independence Day. (prison)
3. Jason is very smart. He also has a highly _____ mind. (invent)
4. 'If you _____ again, I'll make you stand at the front of the class,' the teacher told the boy. (behave)
5. She lost a lot of _____ after her sickness. (weigh)
6. There was a colorless _____ in the bottle that looked like water. (liquefy)
7. The new bridge will be _____ open by the end of this year. (office)
8. Fax machines were a wonderful _____ in the late 20th century. (invent)
9. Concrete is a _____ of sand and cement. (mix)
10. A child should be rewarded for good _____. (behave)
11. The man was sentenced to life _____ for murder. (prison)
12. She thinks she must go on a diet because she is a bit _____. (weigh)

EXERCISE 2: Complete each sentence with a word or phrase in the box. You can use each word or phrase only once. (Hoàn thành mỗi câu bằng một từ hoặc nhóm từ trong ngoặc. Các em dùng mỗi từ hoặc nhóm từ chỉ một lần.)

conveyor belt (n)	: băng chuyền tải hành lí
grind – ground – ground (v)	: xay; nghiền
inventor (n)	: nhà phát minh
manufacture (n)	: việc sản xuất
pour (v)	: rót vào
wood pulp (n)	: bột gỗ (để làm giấy)
remove (v)	: lấy đi; bốc ra
taste (n)	: mùi vị

1. People must _____ the shells of the coffee beans before roasting and grinding them.
2. You can get your suitcases back from the _____ of the airport.

3. This article is about the _____ of chocolate from cocoa bean to the finished product.
4. They often _____ the chocolate into heart-shaped molds for Valentine's Day.
5. Most paper is made from _____.
6. This chocolate leaves a nice _____ in your mouth.
7. Roasted coffee beans must be _____ before any use.
8. Alexander Bain was the _____ of the fax machine.

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1: Choose the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có dấu nhấn chính khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu hỏi.)

Example: A. rural B. traffic C. return D. offer

Đáp án: C: 'return' nhấn vần thứ hai; các từ còn lại nhấn vần một.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. behave | B. idea | C. mixture | D. machine |
| 2. A. delicious | B. liquefy | C. invention | D. vanilla |
| 3. A. telephone | B. vacuum | C. conveyor | D. chocolate |
| 4. A. prisoner | B. papyrus | C. official | D. develop |
| 5. A. factory | B. remove | C. cacao | D. beside |

EXERCISE 2: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in each question. (Hãy chọn từ có phần gạch dưới đọc khác với phần gạch dưới của các từ còn lại.)

Example: A. phone B. hold C. come D. told

Đáp án: C: đọc là: [kəm]

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. w <u>o</u> od | B. f <u>o</u> od | C. g <u>o</u> od | D. b <u>o</u> ok |
| 2. A. p <u>a</u> per | B. b <u>e</u> have | C. m <u>a</u> ker | D. <u>a</u> pple |
| 3. A. th <u>o</u> ught | B. b <u>o</u> ught | C. t <u>o</u> uch | D. t <u>a</u> ught |
| 4. A. b <u>u</u> tt <u>o</u> n | B. cr <u>u</u> sh | C. b <u>u</u> tter | D. p <u>u</u> tting |
| 5. A. s <u>u</u> gar | B. s <u>e</u> venth | C. s <u>i</u> nger | D. s <u>a</u> ying |

PROGRESS TEST 8

(Unit 15 and Unit 16)

I. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence. (2.0 pts)

1. "Would you like to have dinner with us, Joe?" "No, thanks. I've _____ had it."
A. only B. yet C. already D. ever
2. Wendy promised to send me a greeting card, but I haven't received it _____.
A. already B. too C. also D. yet
3. "Do you know that girl in the yellow dress?" "No. I _____ her before."
A. haven't seen B. don't see C. wasn't seeing D. didn't see
4. You should read the _____ that comes with the machine before you use it.
A. manual B. printer C. computer D. guarantee
5. First, put coffee powder in the filter. Next, pour a little boiling water into it. _____, wait about five minutes before putting in some sugar.
A. Lately B. Finally C. Recently D. Actually
6. "_____ was the drug aspirin invented by?" "Felix Hofman, a young German chemist."
A. What B. When C. How D. Who
7. You must _____ the coffee beans before you use it.
A. pour B. grind C. liquefy D. cook
8. Your shoes look very good. I think they are _____ than mine.
A. comfortable B. most comfortable
C. more comfortable D. much comfortable

II. Complete each sentence with the correct tense or form of the verb given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. Bill and Mary _____ (get) married in 2012 and they _____ (live) in Chicago ever since.
2. I _____ (know) my best friend Tom since we _____ (go) to the elementary school.
3. I've already written the letter to my aunt Lucy. I _____ (take) it to the post office tomorrow.
4. My English teacher is very kind to me. She always _____ (give) me good advice when I am in need.

III. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word given in parentheses. (1.0 pt)

1. Speaking English fluently is one of the _____ of this job. (require)
2. It is _____ for a bride to wear white at her wedding. (tradition)
3. The police said that three _____ had escaped from prison yesterday. (prison)
4. We had to wait for half an hour to get our luggage from the _____ belt at the airport. (convey)

IV. Fill in each blank in the paragraph with one word from the box. There is one word that is not needed. (1.0 pt)

<i>language</i>	<i>sports</i>	<i>industry</i>	<i>personal</i>	<i>lawyer</i>
-----------------	---------------	-----------------	-----------------	---------------

Bill Gates III is a very important person in the computer (1) _____. As a boy, he learned a lot from his parents. While Bill was going to school, his father went to college, got a degree, and became a successful (2) _____. From this, Bill learned that you have to work hard if you want something. His mother was a very busy teacher, but she also enjoyed going to parties. From this, he learned something else: If you want to work hard and play hard, you have to make a schedule.

Bill's childhood was not all work. He used to play a lot of (3) _____ : swimming, water-skiing, tennis. When Bill got older, he spent more and more time working – and playing – on a computer. Before he was twenty, Bill developed the world's first computer language for the (4) _____ computer. He thought that every home was going to have a computer, and every computer would need software – his software. He said, "I'm going to make my first million dollars on software by the time I'm 25." And he did!

V. Read the passage. Write 'T' if the sentence under it is true; write 'F' if the sentence is NOT true. (2.0 pts)

INVENTIONS

JEANS

Two Americans, Jacob Davis and Levi Strauss, made the first jeans in 1873. Davis bought cloth from Levi's shop. He told Levi that he had a special way to make strong clothing for workmen. The first jeans were blue. In 1935 jeans became fashionable for women after they saw them in *Vogue* magazine. In the 1970s, Calvin Klein earned \$12.5 million a week from jeans.

TELEVISION

A Scotman, John Logie Baird, transmitted the first television picture on October 25, 1925. The first thing on television was a boy who worked in the office next to Baird's workroom in London. In 1927, Baird sent pictures from *London to Glasgow*. In 1928 he sent pictures to New York, and also produced the first color TV pictures.

ASPIRIN

Felix Hofman, a 29-year-old chemist who worked for the German company Bayer, invented the drug aspirin in March 1899. He gave the first aspirin to his father for his arthritis. By 1950 it was the best selling painkiller in the world, and in 1969 the Apollo astronauts took it to the moon. The Spanish philosopher José Ortega y Gasset called the 20th century "The Age of Aspirin."

1. The first jeans were blue and for both men and women.
2. John Logie Baird sent pictures from London to Glasgow in 1925.
3. The first picture on television was the boy working next to Baird's workroom.
4. The first aspirin was taken by Felix Hofman for his arthritis.

VI. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one. (2.0 pts)

1. My mother made the birthday cake for me.

The birthday cake

2. A coffee bean is bigger than a grain of rice.

A grain of rice is not

3. This message was posted on this website on Monday.

This message has

4. How do you post a message on the website?

Do you know how ?

ĐÁP ÁN (ANSWER KEY)

UNIT 1

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. Where do you live?
2. What time do you get up in the morning?
3. What do you do then?
4. When do you leave for school?
5. How do you go/come to school?
6. Where do you have breakfast?
7. How long does school last?
8. How many lessons do you have in the morning?
9. How often do you have English lessons?
10. Which subject do you like the best?

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|----------|------------|
| 1. lives | 2. studies | 3. dances | 4. plays | 5. manages |
| 6. travels | 7. go | 8. stay | 9. eat | 10. likes |

EXERCISE 3:

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|------------|---------|
| 1. were | 2. was | 3. Were | 4. weren't | 5. were |
| 6. was | 7. were | 8. was | 9. weren't | 10. was |

EXERCISE 4:

- | | | | | |
|---------|------------|------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. saw | 2. told | 3. climbed | 4. spent | 5. gave |
| 6. went | 7. learned | 8. were | 9. built | 10. started |

EXERCISE 5:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. a. strong enough to do | b. too weak to do |
| 2. a. too hot for me to drink. | b. cool enough for me to drink. |
| 3. a. too dark for me to read | b. light enough for me to read |
| 4. a. too sick to eat | b. well enough to eat |
| 5. a. old enough to stay home | b. too young to stay home |
| 6. a. too slow to be | b. quick enough to be |
| 7. a. thin enough to wear | b. too fat to wear |
| 8. a. intelligent enough to do | b. too stupid to do |
| 9. a. too impatient to teach | b. patient enough to teach |
| 10. a. rich enough to buy | b. too poor to buy |

EXERCISE 6:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. too noisy for me to hear | 2. not rich enough to travel |
| 3. not warm enough for us to go | 4. too busy to help |
| 5. not young enough to go to work | 6. not smart enough to solve |
| 7. too expensive for me to buy | 8. not large enough to hold |
| 9. too small for you to put on | 10. not intelligent enough to get |

EXERCISE 7:

1. B	2. A	3. D	4. C	5. B
6. A	7. A	8. D	9. B	10. C

EXERCISE 8:

1. C: has 2. C: have 3. C: was 4. C: to meet 5. C: go on

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. generosity 2. humor 3. beautifully 4. Luckily 5. volunteers
 6. socialize 7. differently 8. beauty 9. generously 10. voluntarily

EXERCISE 2:

1. next-door 2. orphanage 3. hard-working 4. characters 5. reserved
 6. outgoing 7. annoys

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

[s]	[z]	[ɪz]
talks	plays	catches
drinks	tries	kisses
eats	draws	fixes
thinks	goes	washes
hopes	learns	teaches
speaks	swims	pushes
visits	buys	presses
meets	carries	
	sees	
	lives	
	knows	
	tells	
	comes	
	prefers	
	annoys	

EXERCISE 2:

[t]	[d]	[ɪd]
liked	seemed	visited
talked	received	completed
asked	smiled	affected
worked	loved	needed
stopped	turned	added
helped	described	lifted
laughed	listened	waited
looked	excused	decided
thanked	enjoyed	wasted
watched	Preferred	
finished	carried	
crossed	played	
passed	annoyed	
	caused	
	answered	
	studied	
	joined	
	arrived	

UNIT 2**GRAMMAR EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1:**

1. She's going to exercise at the Gym at 6:30.
2. She's going to have breakfast with an important customer at 7:30.
3. She's going to attend a meeting at 8:00.
4. She's going to meet Mr. Rich at the airport at 9:30.
5. She's going to eat lunch with Mr. Rich at 11:30.
6. She's going to visit the fashion fair at 13:30.
7. She's going to receive some guest at the office at 15:30.
8. She's going to open the company party at 18:30.

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. is going to leave | 2. are going to have | 3. is going to take |
| 4. is going to visit | 5. are going to give | 6. is going to start |
| 7. are going to build | 8. is going to be | 9. are going to walk |
| 10. Are you going to make | | |

EXERCISE 3:

- | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. will be | 2. won't come | 3. won't tell | 4. Will you close | 5. will do |
| 6. will pay | 7. will help | 8. will make | 9. won't listen | 10. will have |

EXERCISE 4:

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. am waiting | 2. are making | 3. are trying | 4. is happening |
| 5. am not using | 6. Is – working | 7. is – studying | 8. isn't eating |
| 9. isn't raining | 10. is getting | | |

EXERCISE 5:

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. there | 2. here | 3. upstairs | 4. downstairs | 5. outside |
| 6. inside | 7. outdoors | 8. indoors | 9. there | 10. here |

EXERCISE 6:

1. C	2. D	3. D	4. B	5. A
6. B	7. C	8. A	9. B	10. A

EXERCISE 7:

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. C: watch | 2. B: outside | 4. C: I won't tell |
| 5. A: is having | 3. C: are driving | |

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. unsuccessful | 2. distance | 3. emigration | 4. assistant |
| 5. final | 6. inventors | 7. transmission | 8. commercially |
| 9. exhibition | 10. arrangement | 11. countless | 12. success |

EXERCISE 2:

1. idea	2. kettle	3. steam
4. mechanic	5. interest	6. inventing

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

Words stressed on the first syllable	Words stressed on the second syllable
stationery	delivery
message	invention
service	assistant
customer	commercial
telephone	arrangement
emigrate	directory
distance	downstairs

EXERCISE 2:

1. A	2. D	3. B	4. C	5. A
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 1

(Unit 1 and Unit 2)

I.

1. C	2. D	3. A	4. B
5. A	6. D	7. C	8. B

II. 1. was 2. is watching 3. walk 4. received

III. 1. arrangements 3. successful
2. invention 4. assistant

IV. 1. languages 3. nice
2. favourite 4. large

V.

1. F	2. T	3. F	4. F
------	------	------	------

VI.

1. Your daughter is not old enough to go to work.
2. Why don't you join our English Speaking Club?
3. I don't think my English is good enough to join the Club.
4. Shall we meet outside the theater?

UNIT 3

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online
GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. herself | 2. himself | 3. themselves | 4. ourselves | 5. yourselves |
| 6. himself | 7. itself | 8. yourself | 9. herself | 10. myself |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. himself | 2. herself | 3. each other | 4. yourself | 5. each other |
| 6. each other | 7. themselves | 8. each other | 9. ourselves | 10. each other |

EXERCISE 3:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. it himself. | 2. it myself. | 3. taught herself to cook. |
| 4. carry it yourself? | 5. herself gave it | 6. clean it myself. |
| 7. cut it myself. | 8. it himself. | |

EXERCISE 4:

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. must get | 2. must work | 3. must go | 4. must spend |
| 5. must help | 6. must stay | 7. must be | 8. must leave |

EXERCISE 5:

- | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. have to go | 2. don't have to take | 3. have to water |
| 4. don't have to wear | 5. have to practice | 6. has to see |
| 7. don't have to stay | 8. doesn't have to finish | 9. has to work |
| 10. don't have to hurry | | |

EXERCISE 6:

1. You ought to pay more attention to the teacher's explanations.
2. You ought to go to bed early every night.
3. You ought to take more physical exercise.
4. You ought to stop watching too much TV.
5. You ought to spend more time practicing it.
6. You ought to pay more attention to her lectures.
7. You ought to study the lessons carefully and do more homework.
8. You ought to speak to him about it first.
9. You ought to help her whenever you can.
10. You ought to read more and learn each new word several times.

EXERCISE 7:

1. Why were you late this morning?
Because my alarm didn't ring.
2. Why do you feel so tired?
Because I stayed up late last night.
3. Why are you so unhappy?
Because I got bad marks on the last test.
4. Why did you have a bad headache?
Because I watched the late movie on TV last night.
5. Why did the teacher get angry yesterday?
Because many students did not finish their homework.
6. Why did Mai cry this morning?
Because the teacher blamed her for the mistake.
7. Why wasn't Tung in class yesterday?
Because he was sick at home.
8. Why didn't you come to Susan's party last weekend?
Because I went to my hometown with my parents.

EXERCISE 8:

1. C	2. B	3. D	4. A	5. D
6. D	7. A	8. C	9. D	10. D

EXERCISE 9:

- | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. D: dress herself | 2. C: herself | 3. A: had to |
| 4. A: have to | 5. C: will have to | |

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. dangerous | 2. electricity | 3. injury | 4. safety |
| 5. electric | 6. chemical | 7. dangerously | 8. injured |
| 9. safely | 10. injured | 11. chemistry | 12. electricity |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. include | 2. between | 3. community | 4. household |
| 5. make sure | 6. precaution | 7. cushions | 8. opposite |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

Words stressed on the first syllable	Words stressed on the second syllable
chemical	electrical
injury	include
dangerous	destroy
problem	refrigerator
opposite	between
medicine	beneath

EXERCISE 2:

1. B	2. C	3. C	4. D	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

UNIT 4

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------------|---------|----------|
| 1. watched | 2. painted | 3. learned | 4. ate | 5. got |
| 6. wasn't | 7. heard | 8. didn't arrive | 9. knew | 10. told |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | | |
|----------------|---------|-----------|------------|--------------|
| 1. decided | 2. took | 3. forgot | 4. got | 5. continued |
| 6. didn't stop | 7. was | 8. went | 9. arrived | 10. gave |

EXERCISE 3:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I used to watch cartoons on TV ... | 2. Did you use to go to a kindergarten? |
| 3. I used to cry a lot, ... | 4. Where did you use to live ... ? |
| 5. I used to want to be an adult ... | 6. Carol used to be very shy, ... |
| 7. I didn't use to get up early, ... | |
| 8. I used to make a lot of spelling mistakes, ... | |
| 9. Brian didn't use to drink coffee, ... | |
| 10. Did you use to like wearing new clothes? | |

EXERCISE 4:

1. used to have 2. used to take 3. used to work 4. didn't use to do
 6. didn't use to jog 5. didn't use to be 7. used to be
 8. didn't use to stay up 9. used to like 10. used to ride

EXERCISE 5:

1. on	2. in	3. at	4. on / at	5. at
6. on	7. in	8. in	9. on	10. at

EXERCISE 6:

1. between	2. before	3. after	4. between	5. before
6. between	7. before	8. after	9. between	After

EXERCISE 7:

1. B	2. D	3. C	4. B	5. C
6. A	7. B	8. C	9. B	10. A

EXERCISE 8:

1. A: didn't use 2. C: be 3. C: was grazing
 4. A: excited 5. D: in the fall

VOCABULARY EXERCISES
EXERCISE 1:

1. wise 2. magical 3. excited 4. cruel
 5. traditional 6. magician 7. fortunate 8. excitement
 9. traditionally 10. wisdom 11. fortunately 12. unfortunately

EXERCISE 2:

1. powerful 2. only 3. happy 4. never
 5. At last 6. from 7. quickly 8. pair

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES
EXERCISE 1:

Words stressed on the first syllable	Words stressed on the second syllable
modern harvest festival magically buffalo	remember equipment traditional excited immediately

EXERCISE 2:

1. B	2. D	3. A	4. C	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 2

(Unit 3 and Unit 4)

I.

1. D	2. B	3. B	4. D
5. C	6. A	7. C	8. A

II.

1. had to	3. was
2. travels	4. is cooking

III.

1. dangerous	3. excited
2. chemicals	4. wisdom

IV.

1. basement	3. simple
2. look	4. place

V.

1. T	2. F	3. T	4. F
------	------	------	------

- VI. 1. There is a small bed, a desk, a chair, and a bookshelf in my bedroom.
 2. My Dad won't be home before dinner.
 3. Mr. Hung used to walk to work.
 4. You have to finish all of your homework before going to bed.

UNIT 5

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------|-----------|------------|
| 1. dangerously | 2. dangerous | 3. soft | 4. softly | 5. angrily |
| 6. angry | 7. well | 8. good | 9. badly | 10. bad |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. writes carefully | 2. walks very slowly |
| 3. dance very badly years ago | 4. games nicely today |
| 5. played the music very noisily | 6. happily told me |
| 7. patiently waited | 8. English very well |

EXERCISE 3:

1. You should see the doctor.
2. You shouldn't eat so many candies.
3. You should speak to her about it.
4. You shouldn't worry so much.
5. You should ask her to forgive you.
6. You should not watch TV for long hours.
7. You should take up some interests like gardening or reading.
8. You should eat more vegetables and fruit.

EXERCISE 4:

1. Paul asked me to give Nam his message.
2. Lan told me not to ask her about it.
3. Jane asked everybody to keep silent during the meeting.
4. She asked me to put the litter in the trash can.
5. The teacher told us to write our composition on a sheet of paper.
6. The conductor asked everybody not to smoke on the bus.
7. Tom told his brother not to use his computer again.
8. Sheila asked her sister to turn down the music.
9. Mr. Tam told his daughter not to dye her hair.
10. Mr. Hai told his son to stay away from bad friends.

EXERCISE 5:

1. Lam said I should do morning exercise regularly.
Lam advised me to do morning exercise regularly.
2. Lam said I should not waste so much time chatting on the Net.
Lam advised me not to waste so much time chatting on the Net.
3. Lam said I should join an English speaking club.
Lam advised me to join an English speaking club.
4. Lam said I should help my mother with domestic chores.
Lam advised me to help my mother with domestic chores.
5. Lam said I should not read too many comic books.
Lam advised me not to read too many comic books.
6. Lam said I should be more active in class discussions.
Lam advised me to be more active in class discussions.

EXERCISE 6:

1. A	2. D	3. B	4. C	5. D
6. A	7. B	8. B	9. D	10. B

EXERCISE 7:

1. A: angrily 2. A: to send 3. D: mention 4. A: pay 5. C: lonely

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. behavior | 2. proudly | 3. revision | 4. participation |
| 5. Absence | 6. pride | 7. signature | 8. improvement |
| 9. co-operation | 10. participant | 11. pride | 12. absence |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. In order to | 2. Instead | 3. necessary | 4. proud of |
| 5. pronunciation | 6. mother tongue | 7. report card | 8. come across |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. A	2. C	3. D	4. B	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. B	2. C	3. A	4. D	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

UNIT 6

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. starts	2. gets	3. stops	4. have	5. arrive
6. leaves	7. reach	8. checks	9. take	10. meet

EXERCISE 2:

1. listening	2. working	3. being	4. disturbing	5. sitting
6. running	7. quarreling	8. waiting	9. knocking	10. finding

EXERCISE 3:

1. Fishing	2. catching	3. catching	4. having
5. fishing	6. sitting	doing	

EXERCISE 4:

- May I have another piece of cake, Mom?
- Can I use your telephone, please?
- Could you explain it again, please?
- Can you turn down the television, please?
- May I use my dictionary to do the test?
- Could you tell me the way to the nearest bus station, please?
- May I borrow this book home?
- Could you show me how to use the new camera, please?

9. May I do it later, Miss?

10. Can you lend me your pen, please?

EXERCISE 5:

1. C	2. B	3. A	4. A	5. B
6. D	7. C	8. C	9. B	10. D

EXERCISE 6:

1. A: camping 2. C: may 3. A: Could 4. A: leaving 5. D: leaves

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. education | 2. organizations | 3. naturally | 4. activity |
| 5. enrollment | 6. actor | 7. application | 8. different |
| 9. similarity | 10. coeducational | 11. organized | 12. differently |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. lead to | 2. handicapped | 3. enroll | 4. similar to |
| 5. outdoor | 6. fitness | 7. blind to | 8. encourage |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. B	2. D	3. A	4. C	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. C	2. B	3. A	4. D	5. C
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 3

(Unit 5 and Unit 6)

I.

1. B	2. A	3. D	4. D
5. C	6. B	7. C	8. A

II.

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------------|----------|------------|
| 1. began | 2. am enrolling | 3. going | 4. to meet |
|----------|-----------------|----------|------------|

III.

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. revision | 2. pronunciation | 3. organization | 4. application |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|

IV.

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|--------------|
| 1. lives | 2. checks | 3. watch | 4. librarian |
|----------|-----------|----------|--------------|

V.

1. T	2. F	3. F	4. T
------	------	------	------

- VI.** 1. There aren't any bookshelves in their living room.
 2. May I ask you a question, Mr. Thanh?
 3. Mr. Johnson always drives carefully.
 4. Susan asked me to put the books on the desk.

UNIT 7

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. has been | 2. have met | 3. has known | 4. have read |
| 5. haven't seen | 6. has never eaten | 7. Have you told | 8. hasn't rained |
| 9. have had | 10. have just sold | | |

EXERCISE 2:

1. for	2. since	3. for	4. for	5. since
6. since	7. for	8. since	9. for	10. since

EXERCISE 3:

- | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. have just received | 2. has been | 3. has studied |
| 4. has already finished | 5. has visited | 6. has seen |
| 7. has never been | 8. has had | |

EXERCISE 4:

- | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------|----------|
| 1. have just visited | 2. broke | 3. has been | 4. had |
| 5. have already come | 6. haven't heard | 7. told | 8. asked |
| 9. have known | 10. began | | |

EXERCISE 5:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. the same as | 2. different from | 3. different from |
| 4. the same as | 5. different from | 6. the same as |
| 7. the same hotel as | 8. different from | 9. different from |
| 10. the same movie as | | |

EXERCISE 6:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. not as good as yours. | 2. not as crowded as this city. |
| 3. not as big as theirs. | 4. not as interesting as this one. |
| 5. not as hot as that in the South. | 6. not as comfortable as my new ones. |
| 7. not as long as the Nile River. | 8. not as difficult as algebra. |
| 9. not as heavy as yours. | 10. not as dangerous as car racing. |

EXERCISE 7:

1. D	2. B	3. B	4. A	5. A
6. C	7. D	8. C	9. C	10. B

EXERCISE 8:

- | | | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|----------|------------|
| 1. C: as | 2. D: were | 3. A: has | 4. A: as | 5. C: from |
|----------|------------|-----------|----------|------------|

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1. convenience | 2. ownership | 3. comfortable | 4. neighboring |
| 5. product | 6. residents | 7. humidity | 8. selection |
| 9. <i>uncomfortable</i> | 10. <i>inconvenient</i> | 11. <i>neighborhood</i> | 12. <i>own</i> |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. in comfort | 2. surface mail | 3. especially | 4. discount |
| 5. in order to | 6. air-conditioned | 7. concerned about | 8. close by |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. A	2. C	3. B	4. A	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. B	2. D	3. D	4. A	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

UNIT 8

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. is changing | 2. is becoming | 3. are losing | 4. is bringing |
| 5. is trying | 6. are leaving | 7. is increasing | 8. am reading |
| 9. is waiting | 10. am working | | |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1/ - are ... doing | 2/ - am going |
| - am visiting | - am meeting |
| - are staying | |
| 3/ - am having | 4/ - is leaving |
| - am eating | - is ... flying |
| | - is ... traveling |

EXERCISE 3:

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1/ - are you listening | 2/ - Are they watching | 3/ - do you do |
| - want | - are playing | - usually stay |
| | | - am not getting up |
| 4/ - Do you know | 5/ - are those people looking | |
| - don't think | - are wearing | |
| - are you talking | | |

EXERCISE 4:

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. cleaner | 2. more intelligent | 3. nicer | 4. wetter |
| 5. farther/further | 6. better | 7. busier | 8. older |
| 9. sweeter | 10. more comfortable | | |

EXERCISE 5:

- | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1. the laziest | 2. the most intelligent | 3. the coldest |
| 4. the best | 5. the biggest | 6. the richest |
| 7. the most crowded | 8. the worst | 9. the hottest |
| | | 10. the funniest |

EXERCISE 6:

1. D	2. C	3. D	4. C	5. B
6. A	7. C	8. A	9. B	10. C

EXERCISE 7:

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A: farthest | 2. A: Of | 3. A: worst |
| 4. C: am helping | 5. B: longest | |

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. medical | 2. friendship | 3. peacefully | 4. accessible |
| 5. overcrowding | 6. migrant | 7. entertainment | 8. overcrowded |
| 9. unpleasant | 10. peaceful | 11. inaccessible | 12. unfriendly |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. relatives | 2. permanently | 3. remote | 4. rural |
| 5. increase | 6. In that case | 7. well-paid | 8. plentiful |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. B	2. D	3. A	4. B	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. C	2. B	3. D	4. A	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 4

(Unit 7 and Unit 8)

I.

1. D	2. B	3. D	4. A
5. B	6. C	7. C	8. A

II.

1. has taught / has been teaching	3. are waiting
2. is retiring / is going to retire	4. fell

III. 1. plentiful 2. following 3. especially 4. convenience

IV. 1. neighbors 2. worry 3. problem 4. examples

V.

1. F	2. T	3. F	4. F
------	------	------	------

- VI. 1. A shopping mall is larger than a store.
 2. Wendy is the best student in the class.
 3. They have lived in this neighborhood since 2010.
 4. My answer is not different from yours.

UNIT 9

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- I turned on the radio in order to/so as to listen to the news.
- Mr. Tu took a walk in the park in order to/so as to get some fresh air and exercise.
- She was wearing boots in order to/so as to keep her feet warm and dry.
- He called the fire department in order to/so as to report a fire.
- He put his money in a bank in order to/so as to use it later.
- He went to a bookstore in order to/so as to buy a dictionary.
- They're decorating the room in order to/so as to hold a class party.
- I clapped my hands and yelled in order to/so as to chase a stray dog away.
- I looked on the Internet in order to/so as to find the population of Japan.
- We're collecting money in order to/so as to help the victims of the flood.

EXERCISE 2:

- Steve is going to the bank in order to/so as to cash a check.
- I'm going to the hospital in order to/so as to visit a friend.
- Mr. Ba stopped at a news-stand on his way to the office in order to/so as to buy a newspaper.
- Miss Hien often goes to that cafeteria in order to/so as to have lunch.
- Miss Carol wrote to the school in order to/so as to find a teaching job.
- When I saw Tim, I touched his shoulder in order to/so as to get his attention.
- I called the hotel yesterday in order to/so as to book a room for my holiday.
- I reached into my pocket in order to/so as to get the door key.
- My father often plays badminton in order to/so as to keep fit.
- I stayed up very late last night in order to/so as to finish my homework.

EXERCISE 3:

1. I opened the window in order to/so as to get some fresh air.
2. We're going on holiday in order to/so as to relax after so many days of hard work.
3. She turned down the TV in order not to/ so as not to disturb her roommate.
4. They're going to a restaurant in order to/so as to celebrate their wedding anniversary.
5. I ran all the way to school in order not to/ so as not to be late for the first lesson.
6. He didn't tell the truth in order not to/ so as not to disappoint her.
7. She hid the present in order to/so as to give me a surprise.
8. She's going on a diet in order not to/ so as not to put on weight.
9. I'm learning very hard in order not to/ so as not to fail my final exams.
10. I set my alarm clock in order to/so as to get up at five a.m.

EXERCISE 4:

1. will rise	2. will change	3. will replace	4. won't drive
5. will travel	6. will increase	7. won't use	8. will discover

EXERCISE 5:

1. will phone
2. will give
3. will join
4. will get
5. will buy
6. will make
7. will do
8. will wait
9. will repair
10. will wake

EXERCISE 6:

1. C	2. D	3. B	4. A	5. D
6. B	7. D	8. C	9. B	10. A

EXERCISE 7:

1. B: reach
2. D: turn
3. B: to
4. A: not to
5. A: Would you

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. consciousness
2. patiently
3. sleepy
4. calmly
5. bloody
6. injury
7. patience
8. wounded
9. injured
10. calmness
11. conscious
12. sleepless

EXERCISE 2:

1. instructions
2. sterile dressing
3. immediately
4. revive
5. ease
6. awake
7. elevate
8. emergency

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. B	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. C	2. A	3. D	4. C	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

UNIT 10

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. are collected | 2. are taken | 3. are stamped | 4. are not used |
| 5. are sorted | 6. are sent | 7. is delivered | 8. is shown |

EXERCISE 2:

1. English is spoken in most international conferences.
2. Cheese is made from milk.
3. The grass is cut once a week.
4. Raw fish is often eaten in Japan.
5. The fruit is picked in the summer.
6. The key is always kept in that box.
7. All the information is stored in the computer.
8. Service is not included in the bill.
9. Many good movies are shown on this channel.
10. Strong coffee is often drunk in my town.

EXERCISE 3:

1. The runway of this airport will be repaired soon.
2. Your address should be written on the parcel.
3. Traditional music will be played at the reception.
4. Your eyes should be tested again.
5. More houses should be built for the poor.
6. Their next door neighbors won't be invited to their party.
7. You will be told what to do then.
8. This passage should be read carefully.
9. You will be paid in cash.
10. These clothes shouldn't be washed in hot water.

EXERCISE 4:

1. It's not difficult to learn to ride a bicycle.
2. It is very dangerous to drive in the rain at night.
3. It's not safe to drink this water.
4. It's impossible to give you any more information.
5. It's cheap for you to travel by train.
6. It's hard for him to learn to use the computer.
7. It's expensive for us to live in that city.
8. It's very nice to talk with you.
9. It was impossible to contact their office in Paris.
10. It is safe to go on a journey with you.

EXERCISE 5:

1. delighted to get	4. difficult for you to start
2. surprised to hear	5. happy to have
3. disappointed to think	6. interesting for me to be

EXERCISE 6:

1. C	2. B	3. D	4. C	5. A
6. A	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. B

EXERCISE 7:

1. A: delighted 2. B: cycle 3. B: kept 4. A: invite 5. B: delivered

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1. representative | 2. reduction | 3. environmental | 4. fertile |
| 5. useful | 6. industrial | 7. representative | 8. emptiness |
| 9. fertilizer | 10. industrialization | 11. reducing | 12. usefully |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. packaging | 2. Recycling | 3. household | 4. contact |
| 5. organization | 6. garbage | 7. instead of | 8. melt |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. B	2. D	3. A	4. A	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. A	2. D	3. A	4. A	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 5

(Unit 9 and Unit 10)

I.

1. C	2. A	3. A	4. B
5. C	6. D	7. D	8. B

II.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------|------------|
| 1. be returned | 2. are cleaned | 3. made | 4. knowing |
|----------------|----------------|---------|------------|

III.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. delighted | 2. refill | 3. instructions | 4. minimize |
|--------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------|

IV.

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|---------|--------|
| 1. notice | 2. earth | 3. save | 4. own |
|-----------|----------|---------|--------|

V.

1. T	2. T	3. F	4. F
------	------	------	------

VI.

1. In order to get a scholarship, he is trying to study very hard.
2. *Will you (please) give my best regards to your parents?*
3. Old newspapers are soaked in water overnight.
4. People have recycled glass in our country for a long time.

UNIT 11

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. The man walking beside my father is my uncle.
2. The girl going on picnic with us is my next door neighbor.
3. The tourists speaking to my sister come from Canada.
4. The man working with my brother knows five languages.
5. The student doing the Math problem on the board is the best in this class.
6. The artist painting over there is famous for his landscapes.
7. The people living near my house are very friendly.
8. The children playing in the garden behave very well.
9. The doctor treating my grandmother is very kind.
10. The teacher teaching us Literature has written several books.

EXERCISE 2:

1. The books written by this author are all best-sellers.
2. The movies made by Director Steven have won some awards.
3. The men arrested by the police robbed a bank last week.
4. The goods produced by this company are of high quality.
5. The movie theater situated near my house often shows good movies.
6. The suspension bridges built by local engineers are as good as those built by foreign engineers.
7. The furniture made by this shop is sold on overseas markets.
8. The boy rewarded by the committee has carried his disabled friend on his back to school for years.
9. The pictures taken by that photographer have won some international competitions
10. The automobiles assembled in the country are as good as the imported ones.

EXERCISE 3:

1. The woman living on the third floor works for a publishing house.
2. The songs composed by this songwriter are very popular.
3. The hotel located near the beach has good service.
4. The writer winning this year's Literature Award is only 21 years old.

5. The machine invented by this young student is very useful.
6. The people going on holiday with me are very kind and helpful.
7. The man nominated for 'The Writer of the Year' used to be a clown.
8. The bridges built by students in the Green Summer Program are of great help.
9. The secretaries working in this office can speak English well.
10. The waiter serving us is very polite.

EXERCISE 4:

1. ... I sit here?
2. ... I used your telephone?
3. ... I borrowed this book?
4. ... I stay at your house for a few days?
5. ... I had a look at your photo album?
6. ... I asked you some questions, Miss?
7. ... I turn on the radio?
8. ... I use your computer for a while?
9. ... I read your magazine?
10. ... I use your toilet?

EXERCISE 5:

1. ... waiting for me for a minute?
2. ... listening to what I'm saying?
3. ... not talking so loudly?
4. ... repeating your question?
5. ... signing your name in the petition?
6. ... turning off the TV?
7. ... not using my computer?
8. ... explaining it more clearly, Miss?
9. ... putting your things in the right places?
10. ... not throwing your things on the floor?

EXERCISE 6:

1. B	2. D	3. C	4. B	5. B
6. C	7. C	8. A	9. A	10. A

EXERCISE 7:

1. C: turning
2. A: painted
3. A: searched
4. D: covered
5. B: standing

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. Unfortunately
2. information
3. mountainous
4. accommodation
7. photography
5. magnificence
6. central
8. fortunate
9. accommodate
10. centrally
11. informative
12. photogenic

EXERCISE 2:

1. on the left
2. recognize
3. seat
4. daily
5. low-priced
6. destination
7. finally
8. offshore

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES**EXERCISE 1:**

1. C	2. C	3. A	4. C	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. A	2. C	3. A	4. A	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

UNIT 12**GRAMMAR EXERCISES****EXERCISE 1:**

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. was sleeping | 2. were having | 3. was working |
| 4. were driving | 5. was traveling | 6. were eating |
| 8. was climbing | 9. were preparing | 7. was taking |
| | | 10. was swimming |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. were talking | 2. was watching | 3. were singing | 4. was playing |
| 5. was cooking | 6. were sleeping | 7. was standing | 8. was raining |
| 9. was walking | 10. was crossing | | |

EXERCISE 3:

1. watched	6. drove
2. was watching	7. was having
3. traveled	8. had lunch
4. were traveling	9. came
5. were driving	10. was coming

EXERCISE 4:

1. was taking, went out	6. was climbing, rang
2. was walking, found	7. was watching, fell
3. was singing, heard	8. was washing, dropped, broke
4. saw, was talking	9. broke down, were driving
5. started, were going	10. was standing, fell, hit

EXERCISE 5:

1. am always losing	5. are always cooking
2. are always going out	6. are always playing
3. are always making	7. am always forgetting
4. are always leaving	8. is always drinking

EXERCISE 6:

1. C	2. B	3. D	4. A	5. D
6. C	7. C	8. D	9. A	10. A

EXERCISE 7:

1. A: was shining 2. D: broke 3. D: took
4. C: was exercising 5. A: don't like

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. surprising 2. departed 3. warmth 4. rainy
5. surprisingly 6. fame 7. departure 8. arrival
9. gymnastics 10. snowy 11. surprised 12. warmly

EXERCISE 2:

1. souvenirs 2. Statue of Liberty 3. prison 4. situated
5. carve 6. volcano 7. medical school 8. included

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. B	2. C	3. A	4. A	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. A	2. B	3. D	4. B	5. C
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 6 (Unit 11 and Unit 12)

Download Sách Hay | Đọc Sách Online

I.

1. A	2. B	3. B	4. A
5. D	6. C	7. C	8. D

II.

1. were traveling 2. opening 3. to take 4. have sent

III.

1. exciting	3. sightseeing
2. mountainous	4. accommodation

IV.

1. population 2. century 3. group 4. musician

V.

1. F	2. T	3. T	4. F
------	------	------	------

VI.

1. The woman sitting at the first desk is the secretary.

2. The products made by this company are of high quality.
3. The telephone rang while I was having (my) dinner.
4. He is always leaving the door open after coming in.

UNIT 13

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. have been planted	6. will be played
2. was caught	7. may be eaten
3. was won	8. must be taken away
4. will be treated	9. has been seen
5. has been visited	10. has been grown

EXERCISE 2:

1. ... was chased by the cat.
2. ... are often eaten by big fish.
3. ... will be informed of the test results next week.
4. ... were destroyed by the earthquake.
5. ... have been read by millions of people.
6. ... won't be allowed to enter this building.
7. ... can be understood by everybody.
8. ... have been saved from extinction by conservationists.
9. ... were built by ancient Egyptians along the Nile.
10. ... has been worn since ancient times.

EXERCISE 3:

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| 1. didn't know | 2. had | 3. had told | 4. had never eaten |
| 5. should exercise | 6. couldn't tell | 7. had lost | 8. had to / must visit |
| 9. would come | 10. had worked | | |

EXERCISE 4:

1. ... he needed to borrow a book from the library.
2. ... they were planning a surprise party for her sister.
3. ... he would show me his holiday photos.
4. ... she hadn't flown on a helicopter yet.
5. ... she couldn't lend him any more money.
6. ... her bicycle was not as good as mine.
7. ... he was worried about his exams.
8. ... he didn't understand the rules of that game.
9. ... her computer wasn't working.
10. ... he had trouble with his Math lessons.

EXERCISE 5:

1. family planning campaign
2. fire-making contest, rice-cooking contest
3. flower arranging competition
4. oil painting artist
5. town planning officers

EXERCISE 6:

1. B	2. C	3. A	4. A	5. A
6. D	7. C	8. D	9. B	10. C

EXERCISE 7:

1. A: was stolen
2. B: happened
3. B: was broken
4. B: slept
5. C: said that / told me that

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. popularity
2. decorative
3. suitable
4. competition
5. description
6. unpopular
7. invitation
8. competitors
9. decoration
10. unsuitable
11. inviting
12. popularly

EXERCISE 2:

1. keen on
2. rub
3. upset
4. husk
5. custom
6. Greeting cards
7. Christmas carols
8. Santa Claus

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. A	2. C	3. B	4. B	5. A
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. D	2. D	3. A	4. C	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

UNIT 14

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. was
2. could give
3. should stay
4. would give
5. had ever had
6. had taken
7. had been
8. knew
9. had been
10. cooked

EXERCISE 2:

1. ... if/whether I enjoyed studying at that school.
2. ... If/whether I was happy in her class.
3. ... if/whether they would be at school before 7.00 the following day.
4. ... if/whether Mr. Bao spoke English very well.

5. ... if/whether his parents had been married for over 20 years.
6. ... if/whether we could hear her clearly.
7. ... if/whether that book was mine.
8. ... if/whether she should take a course in computer science.
9. ... if/whether she might borrow that book for a few days.
10. ... if/whether I had had a vacation the month before.

EXERCISE 3:

1. what to do	6. where to put
2. who to invite	7. how to play
3. how to get	8. when to come
4. where to put	9. what to do
5. which to choose	10. who to send

EXERCISE 4:

- | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. to see | 4. eat | 7. to send | 10. read |
| 2. snow | 5. to meet | 8. to go | 11. to rain |
| 3. to play | 6. answer | 9. to pass | 12. to enter |

EXERCISE 5:

1. was organized	6. was prepared
2. were met	7. were made
3. (were) taken	8. was served
4. were cleaned	9. were showed
5. were put	10. were taken

EXERCISE 6:

1. C	2. A	3. B	4. D	5. C
6. A	7. A	8. C	9. D	10. B

EXERCISE 7:

- | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. B: I understood | 2. C: was teaching | 3. C: to go |
| 4. B: to thank | 5. C: exercising | |

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. easily | 2. honorable | 3. bored | 4. attractively |
| 5. compilation | 6. wonders | 7. attractive | 8. boredom |
| 9. surrounding | 10. ease | 11. religious | 12. boring |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|---------------|
| 1. royal | 2. temple | 3. clue | 4. relaxing |
| 5. explain | 6. claim | 7. used to | 8. inhabitant |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. C	2. D	3. B	4. A	5. C
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. A	2. D	3. B	4. C	5. D
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 7

(Unit 13 and Unit 14)

I.

1. B	2. A	3. C	4. C
5. D	6. A	7. D	8. B

II.

1. was chosen 2. wanted 3. are staying 4. sends

III.

1. description 2. unsuitable 3. attractions 4. inhabitants

IV.

1. connected 2. dress 3. games 4. noise

V.

1. T	2. F	3. F	4. F
------	------	------	------

VI.

- The Taj Mahal in India is visited by millions of tourists every year.
- Lan asked me if / whether I sent Christmas cards to my friends every year.
- Lisa said that she was very pleased to see the rice-cooking contest.
- Lisa asked Ba if / whether the judges were going to announce the results.

UNIT 15

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- A: Have you mailed my letter yet?
B: Yes, I've already mailed it.
- A: Have you heard the news yet?
B: yes, I've already heard it.
- A: Have you eaten this fruit yet?
B: Yes, I've already eaten it.

4. A: Has Jill written the report yet?
B: Yes, she has already written it.
5. A: Has Ted repaired his bike yet?
B: Yes, he has already repaired it.
6. A: Has Messi signed the contract yet?
B: Yes, he's already signed it.
7. A: Have Vera and Tom gotten engaged yet?
B: Yes, they've already done it.
8. A: Has Paul bought a new car yet?
B: Yes, he's already bought it.
9. A: Has Yen passed her driving test yet?
B: Yes, she's already passed it.
10. A: Have you sent the invitations yet?
B: Yes, I've already sent them.

EXERCISE 2:

1. A: Have you seen
A: did you see
B: saw
2. A: Have you visited
A: did you go
B: went
3. A: Have you eaten
A: did you eat
B: ate
4. A: Have you met
A: did you meet
B: met
5. A: Has Mai taken
A: did she take
B: took
6. A: Has your brother broken
A: did he break
B: broke

EXERCISE 3:

1. has lived	2. was born	3. lived
4. has taught	5. taught	6. taught

EXERCISE 4:

1. has lived 2. lived 3. has gone 4. went
5. Have you ever shaken 6. shook 7. played 8. has played
9. collected 10. has collected

EXERCISE 5:

1. won	2. have won	3. was
4. scored	5. has played	6. left

EXERCISE 6:

1. C	2. B	3. A	4. B	5. D
6. C	7. A	8. D	9. C	10. B

EXERCISE 7:

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. C: has been | 2. B: had | 3. C: caught |
| 4. C: have already | 5. B: yet | |

VOCABULARY EXERCISES
EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. helpful | 2. necessary | 3. technological | 4. restriction |
| 5. connected | 6. located | 7. helpfully | 8. location |
| 9. necessity | 10. connection | 11. skeptical | 12. technician |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. requirement | 2. post | 3. impact | 4. manual |
| 5. guarantee | 6. access | 7. topic | 8. concern |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES
EXERCISE 1:

1. A	2. C	3. A	4. C	5. C
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. B	2. D	3. D	4. B	5. A
------	------	------	------	------

UNIT 16
GRAMMAR EXERCISES
EXERCISE 1:

1. was created	2. is called	3. was called
4. was given	5. was made	6. have been translated

EXERCISE 2:

- The grass is always cut once a week.
- The key is always kept in that box.
- The front gate hasn't been locked yet.
- Were you invited to their party last week?
- The escaped prisoner has been seen in Denver.
- Apples are being picked at present.
- Is English spoken at this resort?
- The information will be sent to you soon.
- The job should be explained to us clearly.
- More green tea is being drunk these days.

EXERCISE 3:

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|------------|------------------|
| 1. was sold | 2. was converted | 3. played | 4. were held |
| 5. was damaged | 6. broke out | 7. offered | 8. were drawn up |
| 9. be used | 10. made | | |

EXERCISE 4:

- Someone stole my bicycle two days ago.
- No one has signed this letter yet.
- A nine-year-old boy won the painting competition.
- We will send this package to your friend today.
- Thousands of people visit the museum each month.
- We should invite Ann to the party.
- The police have arrested the bank robbers.
- They have sold the old house on the corner.
- J. K. Rowling didn't write this book.
- The police are following the suspect.

EXERCISE 5:

- First, take out a clean filter and a cup.
- Secondly, boil some water in a kettle.
- Next, put some coffee in the filter and put it onto the cup.
- Then, pour boiling water on the coffee in the filter.
- After that, cover the filter with the lid.
- Then, wait until the black liquid stops dripping from the filter.
- After that, remove the filter from the cup.
- Finally, put some sugar in the coffee and enjoy your freshly brewed coffee.

EXERCISE 6:

1. C	2. B	3. B	4. C	5. A
6. A	7. D	8. A	9. D	10. C

EXERCISE 7:

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. B: has been saved | 2. B: repaired | 3. C: work |
| 4. A: was written | 5. C: has / had | |

VOCABULARY EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. official | 2. prisoners | 3. inventive | 4. misbehave |
| 5. weight | 6. liquid | 7. officially | 8. invention |
| 9. mixture | 10. behavior | 11. imprisonment | 12. overweight |

EXERCISE 2:

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. remove | 2. conveyor belt | 3. manufacture | 4. pour |
| 5. wood pulp | 6. taste | 7. ground | 8. inventor |

PRONUNCIATION EXERCISES

EXERCISE 1:

1. C	2. B	3. C	4. A	5. A
------	------	------	------	------

EXERCISE 2:

1. B	2. D	3. C	4. D	5. A
------	------	------	------	------

PROGRESS TEST 8

(Unit 15 and Unit 16)

I.

1. C	2. D	3. A	4. A
5. B	6. D	7. B	8. C

II.

1. got – have lived	3. am taking /or: am going to take
2. have known - went	4. gives

III.

1. requirements	3. prisoners
2. traditional	4. conveyor

IV.

1. industry	3. sports
2. lawyer	4. personal

V.

1. F	2. F	3. T	4. F
------	------	------	------

VI.

- The birthday cake was made for me by my mother.
- A grain of rice is not as big as a coffee bean.
- This message has been posted on this website since Monday.
- Do you know how to post a message on the website?

Mục lục

	Bài	Đáp án
Unit 1. MY FRIENDS (Các bạn của tôi)	5	219
Unit 2. MAKING ARRANGEMENTS (Sắp xếp công việc)	20	217
PROGRESS TEST 1 (Unit 1 and Unit 2)	32	221
Unit 3. AT HOME (Trong nhà)	34	221
Unit 4. OUR PAST (Quá khứ của chúng ta)	48	223
PROGRESS TEST 2 (Unit 3 and Unit 4)	61	225
Unit 5. STUDY HABITS (Những thói quen học tập)	63	225
Unit 6. THE YOUNG PIONEERS CLUB (Đội thiếu niên tiên phong)	75	227
PROGRESS TEST 3 (Unit 5 and Unit 6)	86	228
Unit 7. MY NEIGHBORHOOD (Khu phố của tôi)	89	229
Unit 8. COUNTRY LIFE AND CITY LIFE (Cuộc sống ở thôn quê và ở thành thị)	101	230
PROGRESS TEST 4 (Unit 7 and Unit 8)	115	231
Unit 9. A FIRST-AID COURSE (Khóa học sơ cứu)	117	232
Unit 10. RECYCLING (Việc tái chế)	129	234
PROGRESS TEST 5 (Unit 9 and Unit 10)	140	235
Unit 11. TRAVELING AROUND VIET NAM (Đi du lịch vòng quanh Việt Nam)	143	236
Unit 12. A VACATION ABROAD (Kì nghỉ ở nước ngoài)	154	238
PROGRESS TEST 6 (Unit 11 and Unit 12)	163	239
Unit 13. FESTIVALS (Các lễ hội)	166	240
Unit 14. WONDERS OF THE WORLD (Những kì quan của thế giới)	178	241
PROGRESS TEST 7 (Unit 13 and Unit 14)	191	243
Unit 15. COMPUTERS (Máy vi tính)	194	243
Unit 16. INVENTIONS (Những phát minh)	203	245
PROGRESS TEST 8 (Unit 15 and Unit 16)	214	247